

# EUCLID'S ELEMENTS OF GEOMETRY

The Greek text of J.L. Heiberg (1883–1885)

from *Euclidis Elementa, edidit et Latine interpretatus est I.L. Heiberg, in aedibus  
B.G. Teubneri, 1883–1885*

edited, and provided with a modern English translation, by

*Richard Fitzpatrick*

## Introduction

Euclid's *Elements* is by far the most famous mathematical work of classical antiquity, and also has the distinction of being the world's oldest continuously used mathematical textbook. Little is known about the author, beyond the fact that he lived in Alexandria around 300 BCE. The main subjects of the work are geometry, proportion, and number theory.

Most of the theorems appearing in the *Elements* were not discovered by Euclid himself, but were the work of earlier Greek mathematicians such as Pythagoras (and his school), Hippocrates of Chios, Theaetetus of Athens, and Eudoxus of Cnidos. However, Euclid is generally credited with arranging these theorems in a logical manner, so as to demonstrate (admittedly, not always with the rigour demanded by modern mathematics) that they necessarily follow from five simple axioms. Euclid is also credited with devising a number of particularly ingenious proofs of previously discovered theorems: *e.g.*, Theorem 48 in Book 1.

The geometrical constructions employed in the *Elements* are restricted to those which can be achieved using a straight-rule and a compass. Furthermore, empirical proofs by means of measurement are strictly forbidden: *i.e.*, any comparison of two magnitudes is restricted to saying that the magnitudes are either equal, or that one is greater than the other.

The *Elements* consists of thirteen books. Book 1 outlines the fundamental propositions of plane geometry, including the three cases in which triangles are congruent, various theorems involving parallel lines, the theorem regarding the sum of the angles in a triangle, and the Pythagorean theorem. Book 2 is commonly said to deal with “geometric algebra”, since most of the theorems contained within it have simple algebraic interpretations. Book 3 investigates circles and their properties, and includes theorems on tangents and inscribed angles. Book 4 is concerned with regular polygons inscribed in, and circumscribed around, circles. Book 5 develops the arithmetic theory of proportion. Book 6 applies the theory of proportion to plane geometry, and contains theorems on similar figures. Book 7 deals with elementary number theory: *e.g.*, prime numbers, greatest common denominators, *etc.* Book 8 is concerned with geometric series. Book 9 contains various applications of results in the previous two books, and includes theorems on the infinitude of prime numbers, as well as the sum of a geometric series. Book 10 attempts to classify incommensurable (*i.e.*, irrational) magnitudes using the so-called “method of exhaustion”, an ancient precursor to integration. Book 11 deals with the fundamental propositions of three-dimensional geometry. Book 12 calculates the relative volumes of cones, pyramids, cylinders, and spheres using the method of exhaustion. Finally, Book 13 investigates the five so-called Platonic solids.

This edition of Euclid's *Elements* presents the definitive Greek text—*i.e.*, that edited by J.L. Heiberg (1883–1885)—accompanied by a modern English translation, as well as a Greek-English lexicon. Neither the spurious books 14 and 15, nor the extensive scholia which have been added to the *Elements* over the centuries, are included. The aim of the translation is to make the mathematical argument as clear and unambiguous as possible, whilst still adhering closely to the meaning of the original Greek. Text within square parenthesis (in both Greek and English) indicates material identified by Heiberg as being later interpolations to the original text (some particularly obvious or unhelpful interpolations have been omitted altogether). Text within round parenthesis (in English) indicates material which is implied, but not actually present, in the Greek text.

# ELEMENTS BOOK 1

*Fundamentals of plane geometry involving  
straight-lines*

## Ὅροι.

- α'. Σημεῖον ἐστίν, οὗ μέρος οὐθέν.
- β'. Γραμμὴ δὲ μῆκος ἀπλατές.
- γ'. Γραμμῆς δὲ πέρατα σημεῖα.
- δ'. Εὐθεῖα γραμμὴ ἐστίν, ἣτις ἐξ ἴσου τοῖς ἐφ' ἑαυτῆς σημείοις κεῖται.
- ε'. Ἐπιφάνεια δὲ ἐστίν, ὃ μῆκος καὶ πλάτος μόνον ἔχει.
- ς'. Ἐπιφανείας δὲ πέρατα γραμμαί.
- ζ'. Ἐπίπεδος ἐπιφάνειά ἐστίν, ἣτις ἐξ ἴσου ταῖς ἐφ' ἑαυτῆς εὐθείαις κεῖται.
- η'. Ἐπίπεδος δὲ γωνία ἐστίν ἢ ἐν ἐπιπέδῳ δύο γραμμῶν ἀπτομένων ἀλλήλων καὶ μὴ ἐπ' εὐθείας κειμένων πρὸς ἀλλήλας τῶν γραμμῶν κλίσις.
- θ'. Ὄταν δὲ αἱ περιέχουσαι τὴν γωνίαν γραμμαὶ εὐθεῖαι ᾧσιν, εὐθύγραμμος καλεῖται ἡ γωνία.
- ι'. Ὄταν δὲ εὐθεῖα ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν σταθεῖσα τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιῇ, ὀρθὴ ἑκατέρα τῶν ἴσων γωνιῶν ἐστίν, καὶ ἡ ἐφεστηκυῖα εὐθεῖα ἀκάθετος καλεῖται, ἐφ' ἣν ἐφέστηκεν.
- ια'. Ἀμβλεῖα γωνία ἐστίν ἢ μείζων ὀρθῆς.
- ιβ'. Ὄξεα δὲ ἢ ἐλάσσων ὀρθῆς.
- ιγ'. Ὅρος ἐστίν, ὃ τινός ἐστι πέρας.
- ιδ'. Σχῆμά ἐστι τὸ ὑπὸ τινος ἢ τινῶν ὄρων περιεχόμενον.
- ιε'. Κύκλος ἐστὶ σχῆμα ἐπίπεδον ὑπὸ μιᾶς γραμμῆς περιεχόμενον [ἢ καλεῖται περιφέρεια], πρὸς ἣν ἀφ' ἑνὸς σημείου τῶν ἐντὸς τοῦ σχήματος κειμένων πᾶσαι αἱ προσπίπτουσαι εὐθεῖαι [πρὸς τὴν τοῦ κύκλου περιφέρειαν] ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν.
- ισ'. Κέντρον δὲ τοῦ κύκλου τὸ σημεῖον καλεῖται.
- ιζ'. Διάμετρος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου ἐστίν εὐθεῖα τις διὰ τοῦ κέντρου ἠγμένη καὶ περατουμένη ἐφ' ἑκάτερα τὰ μέρη ὑπὸ τῆς τοῦ κύκλου περιφέρειας, ἣτις καὶ δίχα τέμνει τὸν κύκλον.
- ιη'. Ἡμικύκλιον δὲ ἐστὶ τὸ περιεχόμενον σχῆμα ὑπὸ τε τῆς διαμέτρου καὶ τῆς ἀπολαμβανομένης ὑπ' αὐτῆς περιφέρειας. κέντρον δὲ τοῦ ἡμικυκλίου τὸ αὐτό, ὃ καὶ τοῦ κύκλου ἐστίν.
- ιθ'. Σχήματα εὐθύγραμμά ἐστι τὰ ὑπὸ εὐθειῶν περιεχόμενα, τρίπλευρα μὲν τὰ ὑπὸ τριῶν, τετράπλευρα δὲ τὰ ὑπὸ τεσσάρων, πολὺπλευρα δὲ τὰ ὑπὸ πλειόνων ἢ τεσσάρων εὐθειῶν περιεχόμενα.
- κ'. Τῶν δὲ τριπλεύρων σχημάτων ἰσόπλευρον μὲν τρίγωνόν ἐστι τὸ τὰς τρεῖς ἴσας ἔχον πλευράς, ἰσοσκελὲς δὲ τὸ τὰς δύο μόνας ἴσας ἔχον πλευράς, σιαληνὸν δὲ τὸ τὰς τρεῖς ἀνίσους ἔχον πλευράς.
- κα'. Ἐπι δὲ τῶν τριπλεύρων σχημάτων ὀρθογώνιον μὲν τρίγωνόν ἐστι τὸ ἔχον ὀρθὴν γωνίαν, ἀμβλυγώνιον

## Definitions

1. A point is that of which there is no part.
2. And a line is a length without breadth.
3. And the extremities of a line are points.
4. A straight-line is whatever lies evenly with points upon itself.
5. And a surface is that which has length and breadth alone.
6. And the extremities of a surface are lines.
7. A plane surface is whatever lies evenly with straight-lines upon itself.
8. And a plane angle is the inclination of the lines, when two lines in a plane meet one another, and are not laid down straight-on with respect to one another.
9. And when the lines containing the angle are straight then the angle is called rectilinear.
10. And when a straight-line stood upon (another) straight-line makes adjacent angles (which are) equal to one another, each of the equal angles is a right-angle, and the former straight-line is called perpendicular to that upon which it stands.
11. An obtuse angle is greater than a right-angle.
12. And an acute angle is less than a right-angle.
13. A boundary is that which is the extremity of something.
14. A figure is that which is contained by some boundary or boundaries.
15. A circle is a plane figure contained by a single line [which is called a circumference], (such that) all of the straight-lines radiating towards [the circumference] from a single point lying inside the figure are equal to one another.
16. And the point is called the center of the circle.
17. And a diameter of the circle is any straight-line, being drawn through the center, which is brought to an end in each direction by the circumference of the circle. And any such (straight-line) cuts the circle in half.<sup>†</sup>
18. And a semi-circle is the figure contained by the diameter and the circumference it cuts off. And the center of the semi-circle is the same (point) as (the center of) the circle.
19. Rectilinear figures are those figures contained by straight-lines: trilateral figures being contained by three straight-lines, quadrilateral by four, and multilateral by more than four.
20. And of the trilateral figures: an equilateral triangle is that having three equal sides, an isosceles (triangle) that having only two equal sides, and a scalene (triangle) that having three unequal sides.

δὲ τὸ ἔχον ἀμβλεῖαν γωνίαν, ὀξυγώνιον δὲ τὸ τὰς τρεῖς ὀξείας ἔχον γωνίας.

κβ'. Τῶν δὲ τετραπλεύρων σχημάτων τετράγωνον μὲν ἐστίν, ὃ ἰσόπλευρόν τε ἐστὶ καὶ ὀρθογώνιον, ἑτερόμηκες δέ, ὃ ὀρθογώνιον μὲν, οὐκ ἰσόπλευρον δέ, ῥόμβος δέ, ὃ ἰσόπλευρον μὲν, οὐκ ὀρθογώνιον δέ, ῥομβοειδὲς δὲ τὸ τὰς ἀπεναντίον πλευράς τε καὶ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ἔχον, ὃ οὔτε ἰσόπλευρόν ἐστίν οὔτε ὀρθογώνιον· τὰ δὲ παρὰ ταῦτα τετράπλευρα τραπέζια καλεῖσθω.

κγ'. Παράλληλοι εἰσὶν εὐθεῖαι, αἵτινες ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ἐπιπέδῳ οὔσαι καὶ ἐκβαλλόμεναι εἰς ἄπειρον ἐφ' ἑκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐπὶ μηδέτερα συμπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλαις.

21. And further of the trilateral figures: a right-angled triangle is that having a right-angle, an obtuse-angled (triangle) that having an obtuse angle, and an acute-angled (triangle) that having three acute angles.

22. And of the quadrilateral figures: a square is that which is right-angled and equilateral, a rectangle that which is right-angled but not equilateral, a rhombus that which is equilateral but not right-angled, and a rhomboid that having opposite sides and angles equal to one another which is neither right-angled nor equilateral. And let quadrilateral figures besides these be called trapezia.

23. Parallel lines are straight-lines which, being in the same plane, and being produced to infinity in each direction, meet with one another in neither (of these directions).

† This should really be counted as a postulate, rather than as part of a definition.

### Αἰτήματα.

α'. Ἡιτήσθω ἀπὸ παντὸς σημείου ἐπὶ πᾶν σημεῖον εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

β'. Καὶ πεπερασμένην εὐθεῖαν κατὰ τὸ συνεχὲς ἐπ' εὐθείας ἐκβαλεῖν.

γ'. Καὶ παντὶ κέντρῳ καὶ διαστήματι κύκλον γράψασθαι.

δ'. Καὶ πάσας τὰς ὀρθὰς γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις εἶναι.

ε'. Καὶ ἐὰν εἰς δύο εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη γωνίας δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονας ποιῇ, ἐκβαλλομένης τὰς δύο εὐθείας ἐπ' ἄπειρον συμπίπτειν, ἐφ' ἃ μέρη εἰσὶν αἱ τῶν δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονες.

### Postulates

1. Let it have been postulated to draw a straight-line from any point to any point.

2. And to produce a finite straight-line continuously in a straight-line.

3. And to draw a circle with any center and radius.

4. And that all right-angles are equal to one another.

5. And that if a straight-line falling across two (other) straight-lines makes internal angles on the same side (of itself whose sum is) less than two right-angles, then, being produced to infinity, the two (other) straight-lines meet on that side (of the original straight-line) that the (sum of the internal angles) is less than two right-angles (and do not meet on the other side).<sup>†</sup>

† This postulate effectively specifies that we are dealing with the geometry of *flat*, rather than curved, space.

### Κοινὰ ἔννοια.

α'. Τὰ τῷ αὐτῷ ἴσα καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐστὶν ἴσα.

β'. Καὶ ἐὰν ἴσοις ἴσα προστεθῇ, τὰ ὅλα ἐστὶν ἴσα.

γ'. Καὶ ἐὰν ἀπὸ ἴσων ἴσα ἀφαιρεθῇ, τὰ καταλειπόμενά ἐστὶν ἴσα.

δ'. Καὶ τὰ ἐφαρμόζοντα ἐπ' ἀλλήλα ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.

ε'. Καὶ τὸ ὅλον τοῦ μέρους μεῖζόν [ἐστίν].

### Common Notions

1. Things equal to the same thing are also equal to one another.

2. And if equal things are added to equal things then the wholes are equal.

3. And if equal things are subtracted from equal things then the remainders are equal.<sup>†</sup>

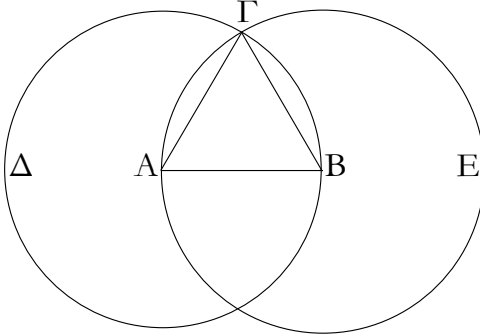
4. And things coinciding with one another are equal to one another.

5. And the whole [is] greater than the part.

† As an obvious extension of C.N.s 2 & 3—if equal things are added or subtracted from the two sides of an inequality then the inequality remains an inequality of the same type.

α'.

Ἐπὶ τῆς δοθείσης εὐθείας πεπερασμένης τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον συστήσασθαι.



Ἐστω ἡ δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα πεπερασμένη ἡ  $AB$ .

Δεῖ δὴ ἐπὶ τῆς  $AB$  εὐθείας τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον συστήσασθαι.

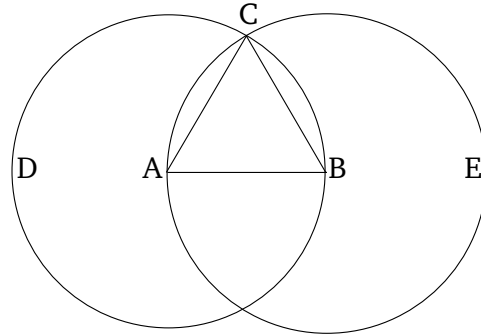
Κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ  $A$  διαστήματι δὲ τῷ  $AB$  κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ  $BΓΔ$ , καὶ πάλιν κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ  $B$  διαστήματι δὲ τῷ  $BA$  κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ  $ΑΓΕ$ , καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ  $Γ$  σημείου, καθ' ὃ τέμνουσιν ἀλλήλους οἱ κύκλοι, ἐπὶ τὰ  $A$ ,  $B$  σημεῖα ἐπεζεύχθωσαν εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $ΓΑ$ ,  $ΓΒ$ .

Καὶ ἐπεὶ τὸ  $A$  σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ  $ΓΔΒ$  κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $ΑΓ$  τῇ  $ΑΒ$ : πάλιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ  $B$  σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ  $ΓΑΕ$  κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $ΒΓ$  τῇ  $ΒΑ$ . ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ  $ΓΑ$  τῇ  $ΑΒ$  ἴση: ἑκατέρα ἄρα τῶν  $ΓΑ$ ,  $ΓΒ$  τῇ  $ΑΒ$  ἐστὶν ἴση. τὰ δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ ἴσα καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐστὶν ἴσα: καὶ ἡ  $ΓΑ$  ἄρα τῇ  $ΓΒ$  ἐστὶν ἴση: αἱ τρεῖς ἄρα αἱ  $ΓΑ$ ,  $ΑΒ$ ,  $ΒΓ$  ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν.

Ἴσόπλευρον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $ΑΒΓ$  τρίγωνον. καὶ συνέσταται ἐπὶ τῆς δοθείσης εὐθείας πεπερασμένης τῆς  $ΑΒ$ : ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

Proposition 1

To construct an equilateral triangle on a given finite straight-line.



Let  $AB$  be the given finite straight-line.

So it is required to construct an equilateral triangle on the straight-line  $AB$ .

Let the circle  $BCD$  with center  $A$  and radius  $AB$  have been drawn [Post. 3], and again let the circle  $ACE$  with center  $B$  and radius  $BA$  have been drawn [Post. 3]. And let the straight-lines  $CA$  and  $CB$  have been joined from the point  $C$ , where the circles cut one another,† to the points  $A$  and  $B$  (respectively) [Post. 1].

And since the point  $A$  is the center of the circle  $CDB$ ,  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$  [Def. 1.15]. Again, since the point  $B$  is the center of the circle  $CAE$ ,  $BC$  is equal to  $BA$  [Def. 1.15]. But  $CA$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $AB$ . Thus,  $CA$  and  $CB$  are each equal to  $AB$ . But things equal to the same thing are also equal to one another [C.N. 1]. Thus,  $CA$  is also equal to  $CB$ . Thus, the three (straight-lines)  $CA$ ,  $AB$ , and  $BC$  are equal to one another.

Thus, the triangle  $ABC$  is equilateral, and has been constructed on the given finite straight-line  $AB$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

† The assumption that the circles do indeed cut one another should be counted as an additional postulate. There is also an implicit assumption that two straight-lines cannot share a common segment.

β'.

Πρὸς τῷ δοθέντι σημείῳ τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ ἴσην εὐθεῖαν θέσθαι.

Ἐστω τὸ μὲν δοθὲν σημεῖον τὸ  $A$ , ἡ δὲ δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἡ  $ΒΓ$ : δεῖ δὴ πρὸς τῷ  $A$  σημείῳ τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ τῇ  $ΒΓ$  ἴσην εὐθεῖαν θέσθαι.

Ἐπεζεύχθω γὰρ ἀπὸ τοῦ  $A$  σημείου ἐπὶ τὸ  $B$  σημεῖον εὐθεῖα ἡ  $ΑΒ$ , καὶ συνεστάτω ἐπ' αὐτῆς τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον τὸ  $ΔΑΒ$ , καὶ ἐκβεβλήσθωσαν ἐπ' εὐθείας ταῖς  $ΔΑ$ ,  $ΔΒ$  εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $ΑΕ$ ,  $ΒΖ$ , καὶ κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ  $B$  διαστήματι δὲ τῷ  $ΒΓ$  κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ  $ΓΗΘ$ , καὶ πάλιν κέντρῳ τῷ  $Δ$  καὶ διαστήματι τῷ  $ΔΗ$  κύκλος

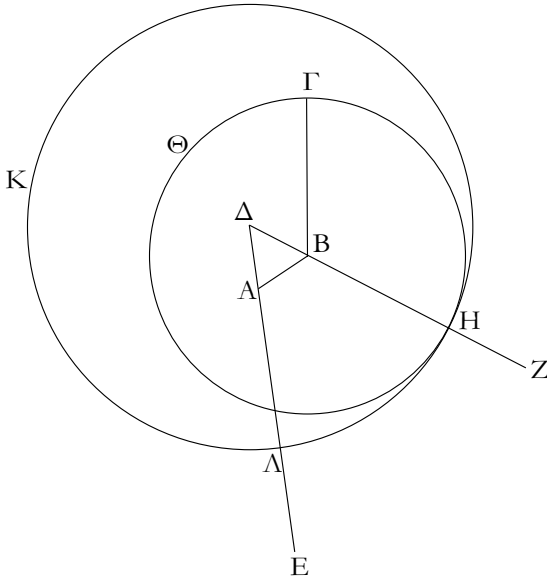
Proposition 2†

To place a straight-line equal to a given straight-line at a given point.

Let  $A$  be the given point, and  $BC$  the given straight-line. So it is required to place a straight-line at point  $A$  equal to the given straight-line  $BC$ .

For let the straight-line  $AB$  have been joined from point  $A$  to point  $B$  [Post. 1], and let the equilateral triangle  $DAB$  have been constructed upon it [Prop. 1.1]. And let the straight-lines  $AE$  and  $BF$  have been produced in a straight-line with  $DA$  and  $DB$  (respectively) [Post. 2]. And let the circle  $CGH$  with center  $B$  and ra-

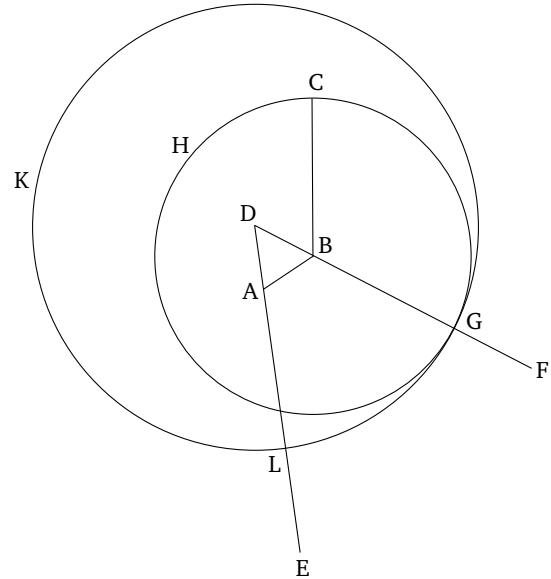
γεγράφθω ὁ ΗΚΛ.



Ἐπεὶ οὖν τὸ Β σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ ΓΗΘ, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΒΓ τῇ ΒΗ. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ Δ σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ ΗΚΛ κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΔΛ τῇ ΔΗ, ὧν ἡ ΔΑ τῇ ΔΒ ἴση ἐστίν. λοιπὴ ἄρα ἡ ΑΛ λοιπῇ τῇ ΒΗ ἐστὶν ἴση. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ΒΓ τῇ ΒΗ ἴση· ἐκατέρω ἄρα τῶν ΑΛ, ΒΓ τῇ ΒΗ ἐστὶν ἴση. τὰ δὲ τῶ αὐτῶ ἴσα καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐστὶν ἴσα· καὶ ἡ ΑΛ ἄρα τῇ ΒΓ ἐστὶν ἴση.

Πρὸς ἄρα τῷ δοθέντι σημείῳ τῷ Α τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ τῇ ΒΓ ἴση εὐθεῖα κείται ἡ ΑΛ· ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

dius  $BC$  have been drawn [Post. 3], and again let the circle  $GKL$  with center  $D$  and radius  $DG$  have been drawn [Post. 3].



Therefore, since the point  $B$  is the center of (the circle)  $CGH$ ,  $BC$  is equal to  $BG$  [Def. 1.15]. Again, since the point  $D$  is the center of the circle  $GKL$ ,  $DL$  is equal to  $DG$  [Def. 1.15]. And within these,  $DA$  is equal to  $DB$ . Thus, the remainder  $AL$  is equal to the remainder  $BG$  [C.N. 3]. But  $BC$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $BG$ . Thus,  $AL$  and  $BC$  are each equal to  $BG$ . But things equal to the same thing are also equal to one another [C.N. 1]. Thus,  $AL$  is also equal to  $BC$ .

Thus, the straight-line  $AL$ , equal to the given straight-line  $BC$ , has been placed at the given point  $A$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

† This proposition admits of a number of different cases, depending on the relative positions of the point  $A$  and the line  $BC$ . In such situations, Euclid invariably only considers one particular case—usually, the most difficult—and leaves the remaining cases as exercises for the reader.

γ'.

Δύο δοθεισῶν εὐθειῶν ἀνίσων ἀπὸ τῆς μείζονος τῇ ἐλάσσονι ἴσην εὐθεῖαν ἀφελεῖν.

Ἐστωσαν αἱ δοθεῖσαι δύο εὐθεῖαι ἄνισοι αἱ  $AB$ ,  $C$ , ὧν μείζων ἔστω ἡ  $AB$ · δεῖ δὴ ἀπὸ τῆς μείζονος τῆς  $AB$  τῇ ἐλάσσονι τῇ  $C$  ἴσην εὐθεῖαν ἀφελεῖν.

Κεῖσθω πρὸς τῷ  $A$  σημείῳ τῇ  $C$  εὐθείᾳ ἴση ἡ  $AD$ · καὶ κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ  $A$  διαστήματι δὲ τῷ  $AD$  κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ  $DEF$ .

Καὶ ἐπεὶ τὸ  $A$  σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ  $DEF$  κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $AE$  τῇ  $AD$ · ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ  $C$  τῇ  $AD$  ἐστὶν ἴση· ἐκατέρω ἄρα τῶν  $AE$ ,  $C$  τῇ  $AD$  ἐστὶν ἴση· ὥστε καὶ ἡ  $AE$  τῇ  $C$  ἐστὶν ἴση.

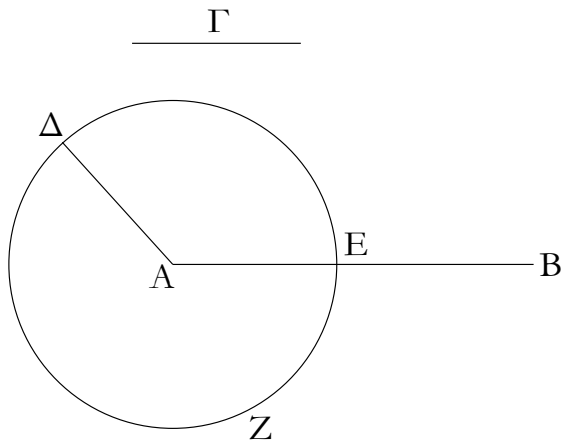
### Proposition 3

For two given unequal straight-lines, to cut off from the greater a straight-line equal to the lesser.

Let  $AB$  and  $C$  be the two given unequal straight-lines, of which let the greater be  $AB$ . So it is required to cut off a straight-line equal to the lesser  $C$  from the greater  $AB$ .

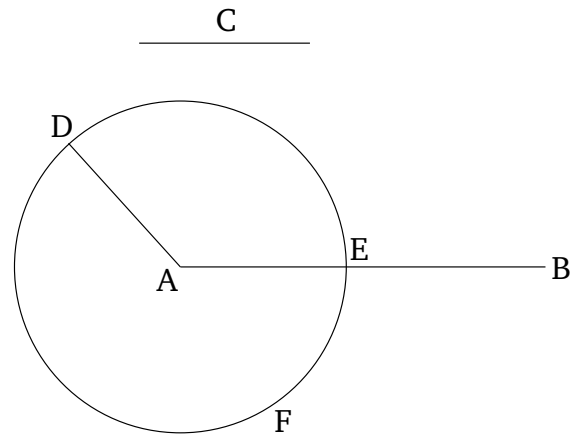
Let the line  $AD$ , equal to the straight-line  $C$ , have been placed at point  $A$  [Prop. 1.2]. And let the circle  $DEF$  have been drawn with center  $A$  and radius  $AD$  [Post. 3].

And since point  $A$  is the center of circle  $DEF$ ,  $AE$  is equal to  $AD$  [Def. 1.15]. But,  $C$  is also equal to  $AD$ . Thus,  $AE$  and  $C$  are each equal to  $AD$ . So  $AE$  is also



Δύο ἄρα δοθεισῶν εὐθειῶν ἀνίσων τῶν  $AB$ ,  $\Gamma$  ἀπὸ τῆς μείζονος τῆς  $AB$  τῆ ἐλάσσονι τῆ  $\Gamma$  ἴση ἀφῆρηται ἡ  $AE$ . ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

equal to  $C$  [C.N. 1].



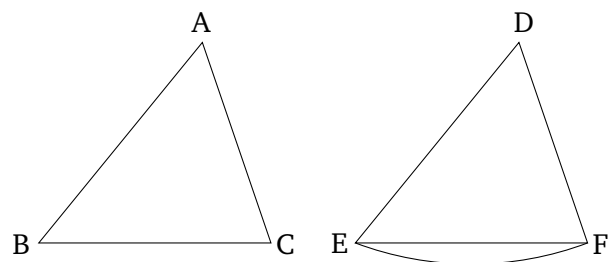
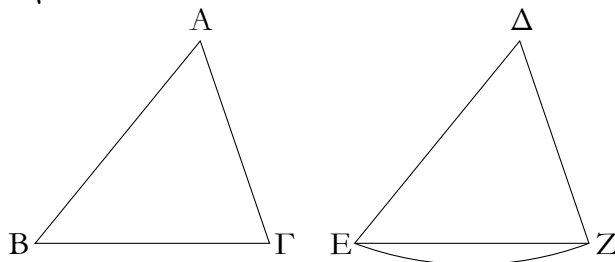
Thus, for two given unequal straight-lines,  $AB$  and  $C$ , the (straight-line)  $AE$ , equal to the lesser  $C$ , has been cut off from the greater  $AB$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

δ'.

Ἐάν δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευρὰς [ταῖς] δυσὶ πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρᾳ καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῆ γωνία ἴσην ἔχη τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην, καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῆ βάσει ἴσην ἔξει, καὶ τὸ τρίγωνον τῶ τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρᾳ ἑκατέρᾳ, ὅφ' ἂς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν.

Proposition 4

If two triangles have two corresponding sides equal, and have the angles enclosed by the equal sides equal, then they will also have equal bases, and the two triangles will be equal, and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles.



Ἐστω δύο τρίγωνα τὰ  $AB\Gamma$ ,  $\Delta EZ$  τὰς δύο πλευρὰς τὰς  $AB$ ,  $A\Gamma$  ταῖς δυσὶ πλευραῖς ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $\Delta Z$  ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρᾳ τὴν μὲν  $AB$  τῆ  $\Delta E$  τὴν δὲ  $A\Gamma$  τῆ  $\Delta Z$  καὶ γωνίαν τὴν ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  ἴσην. λέγω, ὅτι καὶ βάσις ἡ  $B\Gamma$  βάσει τῆ  $EZ$  ἴση ἔστί, καὶ τὸ  $AB\Gamma$  τρίγωνον τῶ  $\Delta EZ$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρᾳ ἑκατέρᾳ, ὅφ' ἂς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν, ἢ μὲν ὑπὸ  $AB\Gamma$  τῆ ὑπὸ  $\Delta EZ$ , ἢ δὲ ὑπὸ  $A\Gamma B$  τῆ ὑπὸ  $\Delta Z E$ .

Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles having the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  equal to the two sides  $DE$  and  $DF$ , respectively. (That is)  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . And (let) the angle  $BAC$  (be) equal to the angle  $EDF$ . I say that the base  $BC$  is also equal to the base  $EF$ , and triangle  $ABC$  will be equal to triangle  $DEF$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles. (That is)  $ABC$  to  $DEF$ , and  $ACB$  to  $DFE$ .

Ἐφαρμοζομένου γὰρ τοῦ  $AB\Gamma$  τριγώνου ἐπὶ τὸ  $\Delta EZ$  τρίγωνον καὶ τιθεμένου τοῦ μὲν  $A$  σημείου ἐπὶ τὸ  $\Delta$  σημεῖον τῆς δὲ  $AB$  εὐθείας ἐπὶ τὴν  $\Delta E$ , ἐφαρμόσει καὶ τὸ  $B$  σημεῖον ἐπὶ τὸ  $E$  διὰ τὸ ἴσην εἶναι τὴν  $AB$  τῆ  $\Delta E$ . ἐφαρμοσάσης δὲ τῆς  $AB$  ἐπὶ τὴν  $\Delta E$  ἐφαρμόσει

Let the triangle  $ABC$  be applied to the triangle  $DEF$ ,<sup>†</sup> the point  $A$  being placed on the point  $D$ , and the straight-line  $AB$  on  $DE$ . The point  $B$  will also coincide with  $E$ , on account of  $AB$  being equal to  $DE$ . So (because of)  $AB$  coinciding with  $DE$ , the straight-line



καὶ ἡ  $ΑΓ$  εὐθεῖα ἐπὶ τὴν  $ΔΖ$  διὰ τὸ ἴσην εἶναι τὴν ὑπὸ  $ΒΑΓ$  γωνίαν τῇ ὑπὸ  $ΕΔΖ$ . ὥστε καὶ τὸ  $Γ$  σημεῖον ἐπὶ τὸ  $Ζ$  σημεῖον ἐφαρμόσει διὰ τὸ ἴσην πάλιν εἶναι τὴν  $ΑΓ$  τῇ  $ΔΖ$ . ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὸ  $Β$  ἐπὶ τὸ  $Ε$  ἐφαρμόσει ὥστε βάσις ἢ  $ΒΓ$  ἐπὶ βάσιν τὴν  $ΕΖ$  ἐφαρμόσει. εἰ γὰρ τοῦ μὲν  $Β$  ἐπὶ τὸ  $Ε$  ἐφαρμόσαντος τοῦ δὲ  $Γ$  ἐπὶ τὸ  $Ζ$  ἢ  $ΒΓ$  βάσις ἐπὶ τὴν  $ΕΖ$  οὐκ ἐφαρμόσει, δύο εὐθεῖαι χωρίον περιέξουσιν ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύνατον. ἐφαρμόσει ἄρα ἢ  $ΒΓ$  βάσις ἐπὶ τὴν  $ΕΖ$  καὶ ἴση αὐτῇ ἔσται ὥστε καὶ ὅλον τὸ  $ΑΒΓ$  τρίγωνον ἐπὶ ὅλον τὸ  $ΔΕΖ$  τρίγωνον ἐφαρμόσει καὶ ἴσον αὐτῷ ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ἐπὶ τὰς λοιπὰς γωνίας ἐφαρμόσουσι καὶ ἴσαι αὐταῖς ἔσονται, ἡ μὲν ὑπὸ  $ΑΒΓ$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $ΔΕΖ$  ἢ δὲ ὑπὸ  $ΑΓΒ$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $ΔΖΕ$ .

Ἐάν ἄρα δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευράς [ταῖς] δύο πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῇ γωνία ἴσην ἔχη τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην, καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῇ βάσει ἴσην ἔξει, καὶ τὸ τρίγωνον τῷ τριγώνω ἴσον ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρα ἑκατέρω, ὑφ' ἧς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

$AC$  will also coincide with  $DF$ , on account of the angle  $BAC$  being equal to  $EDF$ . So the point  $C$  will also coincide with the point  $F$ , again on account of  $AC$  being equal to  $DF$ . But, point  $B$  certainly also coincided with point  $E$ , so that the base  $BC$  will coincide with the base  $EF$ . For if  $B$  coincides with  $E$ , and  $C$  with  $F$ , and the base  $BC$  does not coincide with  $EF$ , then two straight-lines will encompass an area. The very thing is impossible [Post. 1].<sup>†</sup> Thus, the base  $BC$  will coincide with  $EF$ , and will be equal to it [C.N. 4]. So the whole triangle  $ABC$  will coincide with the whole triangle  $DEF$ , and will be equal to it [C.N. 4]. And the remaining angles will coincide with the remaining angles, and will be equal to them [C.N. 4]. (That is)  $ABC$  to  $DEF$ , and  $ACB$  to  $DFE$  [C.N. 4].

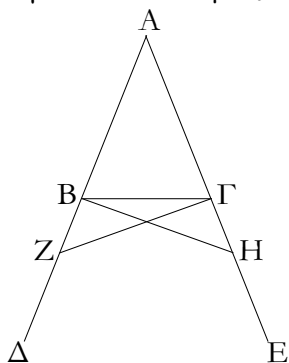
Thus, if two triangles have two corresponding sides equal, and have the angles enclosed by the equal sides equal, then they will also have equal bases, and the two triangles will be equal, and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

<sup>†</sup> The application of one figure to another should be counted as an additional postulate.

<sup>‡</sup> Since Post. 1 implicitly assumes that the straight-line joining two given points is unique.

ε'.

Τῶν ἰσοσκελῶν τριγώνων αἱ τρὸς τῇ βάσει γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν, καὶ προσειβληθειῶν τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν αἱ ὑπὸ τὴν βάσιν γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ἔσονται.



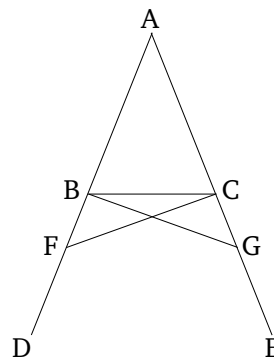
Ἔστω τρίγωνον ἰσοσκελὲς τὸ  $ΑΒΓ$  ἴσην ἔχον τὴν  $ΑΒ$  πλευρὰν τῇ  $ΑΓ$  πλευρᾷ, καὶ προσειβεβλήσθωσαν ἐπ' εὐθείας ταῖς  $ΑΒ$ ,  $ΑΓ$  εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $ΒΔ$ ,  $ΓΕ$ . λέγω, ὅτι ἡ μὲν ὑπὸ  $ΑΒΓ$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $ΑΓΒ$  ἴση ἐστίν, ἡ δὲ ὑπὸ  $ΓΒΔ$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $ΒΓΕ$ .

Εἰλήφθω γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς  $ΒΔ$  τυχὸν σημείον τὸ  $Ζ$ , καὶ ἀφηρήσθω ἀπὸ τῆς μείζονος τῆς  $ΑΕ$  τῇ ἐλάσσονι τῇ  $ΑΖ$  ἴση ἢ  $ΑΗ$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθωσαν αἱ  $ΖΓ$ ,  $ΗΒ$  εὐθεῖαι.

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν  $ΑΖ$  τῇ  $ΑΗ$  ἢ δὲ  $ΑΒ$  τῇ

### Proposition 5

For isosceles triangles, the angles at the base are equal to one another, and if the equal sides are produced then the angles under the base will be equal to one another.



Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle having the side  $AB$  equal to the side  $AC$ , and let the straight-lines  $BD$  and  $CE$  have been produced in a straight-line with  $AB$  and  $AC$  (respectively) [Post. 2]. I say that the angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $ACB$ , and (angle)  $CBD$  to  $BCE$ .

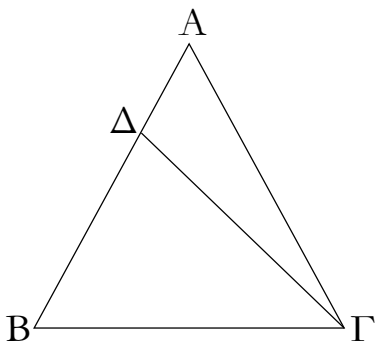
For let the point  $F$  have been taken somewhere on  $BD$ , and let  $AG$  have been cut off from the greater  $AE$ , equal to the lesser  $AF$  [Prop. 1.3]. Also, let the straight-lines  $FC$  and  $GB$  have been joined [Post. 1].

ΑΓ, δύο δὴ αἱ ΖΑ, ΑΓ δυοὶ ταῖς ΗΑ, ΑΒ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ γωνίαν κοινὴν περιέχουσι τὴν ὑπὸ ΖΑΗ· βάσις ἄρα ἡ ΖΓ βάσει τῇ ΗΒ ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ ΑΖΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΑΗΒ τριγώνω ἴσον ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω, ὅφ' ἄς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν, ἡ μὲν ὑπὸ ΑΓΖ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΒΗ, ἡ δὲ ὑπὸ ΑΖΓ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΗΒ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ὅλη ἡ ΑΖ ὅλη τῇ ΑΗ ἐστὶν ἴση, ὧν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΑΓ ἐστὶν ἴση, λοιπὴ ἄρα ἡ ΒΖ λοιπῇ τῇ ΓΗ ἐστὶν ἴση. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ΖΓ τῇ ΗΒ ἴση· δύο δὴ αἱ ΒΖ, ΖΓ δυοὶ ταῖς ΓΗ, ΗΒ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΖΓ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΗΒ ἴση, καὶ βάσις αὐτῶν κοινὴ ἡ ΒΓ· καὶ τὸ ΒΖΓ ἄρα τρίγωνον τῷ ΓΗΒ τριγώνω ἴσον ἔσται, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω, ὅφ' ἄς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν· ἴση ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν ὑπὸ ΖΒΓ τῇ ὑπὸ ΗΓΒ ἡ δὲ ὑπὸ ΒΓΖ τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΒΗ. ἐπεὶ οὖν ὅλη ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΗ γωνία ὅλη τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΖ γωνία ἐδείχθη ἴση, ὧν ἡ ὑπὸ ΓΒΗ τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΓΖ ἴση, λοιπὴ ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ λοιπῇ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ εἰσι πρὸς τῇ βάσει τοῦ ΑΒΓ τριγώνου. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ ΖΒΓ τῇ ὑπὸ ΗΓΒ ἴση· καὶ εἰσὶν ὑπὸ τὴν βάσιν.

Τῶν ἄρα ἰσοσκελῶν τριγώνων αἱ πρὸς τῇ βάσει γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσὶν, καὶ προσειβληθεισῶν τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν αἱ ὑπὸ τὴν βάσιν γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ἔσονται· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

ζ'.

Ἐὰν τριγώνου αἱ δύο γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ᾦσιν, καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ τὰς ἴσας γωνίας ὑποτείνουσαι πλευραὶ ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ἔσονται.



Ἐστω τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ ἴσην ἔχον τὴν ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ γωνίαν τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ γωνία· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ πλευρὰ ἡ ΑΒ πλευρᾷ τῇ ΑΓ ἐστὶν ἴση.

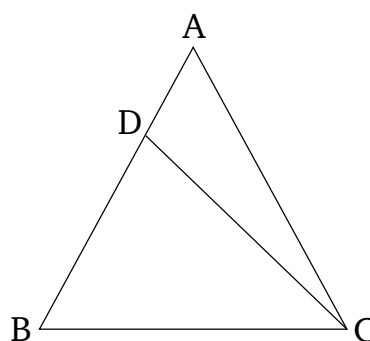
Εἰ γὰρ ἄνισός ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΑΓ, ἡ ἑτέρα αὐτῶν μείζων ἐστίν. ἔστω μείζων ἡ ΑΒ, καὶ ἀφηγήσθω ἀπὸ

In fact, since  $AF$  is equal to  $AG$ , and  $AB$  to  $AC$ , the two (straight-lines)  $FA$ ,  $AC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $GA$ ,  $AB$ , respectively. They also encompass a common angle  $FAG$ . Thus, the base  $FC$  is equal to the base  $GB$ , and the triangle  $AFC$  will be equal to the triangle  $AGB$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles [Prop. 1.4]. (That is)  $ACF$  to  $ABG$ , and  $AFC$  to  $AGB$ . And since the whole of  $AF$  is equal to the whole of  $AG$ , within which  $AB$  is equal to  $AC$ , the remainder  $BF$  is thus equal to the remainder  $CG$  [C.N. 3]. But  $FC$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $GB$ . So the two (straight-lines)  $BF$ ,  $FC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $CG$ ,  $GB$ , respectively, and the angle  $BFC$  (is) equal to the angle  $CGB$ , and the base  $BC$  is common to them. Thus, the triangle  $BFC$  will be equal to the triangle  $CGB$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles [Prop. 1.4]. Thus,  $FBC$  is equal to  $GCB$ , and  $BCF$  to  $CBG$ . Therefore, since the whole angle  $ABG$  was shown (to be) equal to the whole angle  $ACF$ , within which  $CBG$  is equal to  $BCF$ , the remainder  $ABC$  is thus equal to the remainder  $ACB$  [C.N. 3]. And they are at the base of triangle  $ABC$ . And  $FBC$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $GCB$ . And they are under the base.

Thus, for isosceles triangles, the angles at the base are equal to one another, and if the equal sides are produced then the angles under the base will be equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

### Proposition 6

If a triangle has two angles equal to one another then the sides subtending the equal angles will also be equal to one another.



Let  $ABC$  be a triangle having the angle  $ABC$  equal to the angle  $ACB$ . I say that side  $AB$  is also equal to side  $AC$ .

For if  $AB$  is unequal to  $AC$  then one of them is greater. Let  $AB$  be greater. And let  $DB$ , equal to

τῆς μείζονος τῆς  $AB$  τῆ ἐλάττωνι τῆ  $AG$  ἴση ἢ  $\Delta B$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $\Delta G$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $\Delta B$  τῆ  $AG$  κοινῇ δὲ ἡ  $BG$ , δύο δὲ αἱ  $\Delta B$ ,  $BG$  δύο ταῖς  $AG$ ,  $GB$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta BG$  γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ  $AGB$  ἐστὶν ἴση· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $\Delta G$  βάσει τῆ  $AB$  ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ  $\Delta BG$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $AGB$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἔσται, τὸ ἔλασσον τῷ μείζονι· ὅπερ ἄτοπον· οὐκ ἄρα ἄνισός ἐστὶν ἡ  $AB$  τῆ  $AG$  ἴση ἄρα.

Ἐὰν ἄρα τριγώνου αἱ δύο γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ᾖσιν, καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ τὰς ἴσας γωνίας ὑποτείνουσαι πλευραὶ ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις ἔσονται· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

the lesser  $AC$ , have been cut off from the greater  $AB$  [Prop. 1.3]. And let  $DC$  have been joined [Post. 1].

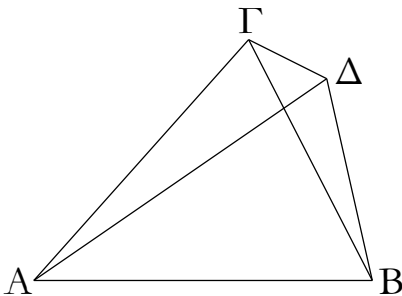
Therefore, since  $DB$  is equal to  $AC$ , and  $BC$  (is) common, the two sides  $DB$ ,  $BC$  are equal to the two sides  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , respectively, and the angle  $DBC$  is equal to the angle  $ACB$ . Thus, the base  $DC$  is equal to the base  $AB$ , and the triangle  $DBC$  will be equal to the triangle  $ACB$  [Prop. 1.4], the lesser to the greater. The very notion (is) absurd [C.N. 5]. Thus,  $AB$  is not unequal to  $AC$ . Thus, (it is) equal.<sup>†</sup>

Thus, if a triangle has two angles equal to one another then the sides subtending the equal angles will also be equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

<sup>†</sup> Here, use is made of the previously unmentioned common notion that if two quantities are not unequal then they must be equal. Later on, use is made of the closely related common notion that if two quantities are not greater than or less than one another, respectively, then they must be equal to one another.

ζ.

Ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς εὐθείας δύο ταῖς αὐταῖς εὐθείαις ἄλλαι δύο εὐθεῖαι ἴσαι ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν οὐ συσταθήσονται πρὸς ἄλλω καὶ ἄλλω σημείῳ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰ αὐτὰ πέρατα ἔχουσαι ταῖς ἐξ ἀρχῆς εὐθείαις.



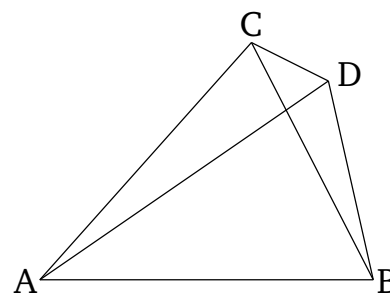
Εἰ γὰρ δυνατόν, ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς εὐθείας τῆς  $AB$  δύο ταῖς αὐταῖς εὐθείαις ταῖς  $AG$ ,  $GB$  ἄλλαι δύο εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $AD$ ,  $\Delta B$  ἴσαι ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν συνεστάτωσαν πρὸς ἄλλω καὶ ἄλλω σημείῳ τῷ τε  $\Gamma$  καὶ  $\Delta$  ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰ αὐτὰ πέρατα ἔχουσαι, ὥστε ἴσην εἶναι τὴν μὲν  $GA$  τῆ  $\Delta A$  τὸ αὐτὸ πέρασ ἔχουσαν αὐτῇ τὸ  $A$ , τὴν δὲ  $GB$  τῆ  $\Delta B$  τὸ αὐτὸ πέρασ ἔχουσαν αὐτῇ τὸ  $B$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $GD$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $AG$  τῆ  $AD$ , ἴση ἐστὶ καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $AGD$  τῆ ὑπὸ  $ADG$ · μείζων ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $ADG$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $\Delta GB$ · πολλῶν ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma \Delta B$  μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ  $\Delta GB$ . πάλιν ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $GB$  τῆ  $\Delta B$ , ἴση ἐστὶ καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma \Delta B$  γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ  $\Delta GB$ . ἐδείχθη δὲ αὐτῆς καὶ πολλῶν μείζων· ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύατον.

Οὐκ ἄρα ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς εὐθείας δύο ταῖς αὐταῖς εὐθείαις ἄλλαι δύο εὐθεῖαι ἴσαι ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν συ-

## Proposition 7

On the same straight-line, two other straight-lines equal, respectively, to two (given) straight-lines (which meet) cannot be constructed (meeting) at a different point on the same side (of the straight-line), but having the same ends as the given straight-lines.



For, if possible, let the two straight-lines  $AD$ ,  $DB$ , equal to two (given) straight-lines  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , respectively, have been constructed on the same straight-line  $AB$ , meeting at different points,  $C$  and  $D$ , on the same side (of  $AB$ ), and having the same ends (on  $AB$ ). So  $CA$  and  $DA$  are equal, having the same ends at  $A$ , and  $CB$  and  $DB$  are equal, having the same ends at  $B$ . And let  $CD$  have been joined [Post. 1].

Therefore, since  $AC$  is equal to  $AD$ , the angle  $ACD$  is also equal to angle  $ADC$  [Prop. 1.5]. Thus,  $ADC$  (is) greater than  $DCB$  [C.N. 5]. Thus,  $CDB$  is much greater than  $DCB$  [C.N. 5]. Again, since  $CB$  is equal to  $DB$ , the angle  $CDB$  is also equal to angle  $DCB$  [Prop. 1.5]. But it was shown that the former (angle) is also much greater (than the latter). The very thing is impossible.

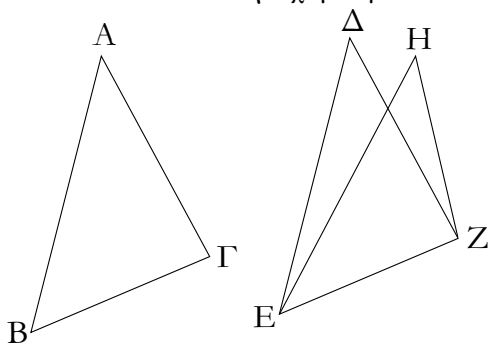
Thus, on the same straight-line, two other straight-

σταθήσονται πρὸς ἄλλω καὶ ἄλλω σημείῳ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰ αὐτὰ πέρατα ἔχουσαι ταῖς ἐξ ἀρχῆς εὐθείαις· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

lines equal, respectively, to two (given) straight-lines (which meet) cannot be constructed (meeting) at a different point on the same side (of the straight-line), but having the same ends as the given straight-lines. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

η'.

Ἐὰν δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευρὰς [ταῖς] δύο πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, ἔχη δὲ καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῇ βάσει ἴσην, καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῇ γωνίᾳ ἴσην ἔξει τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην.



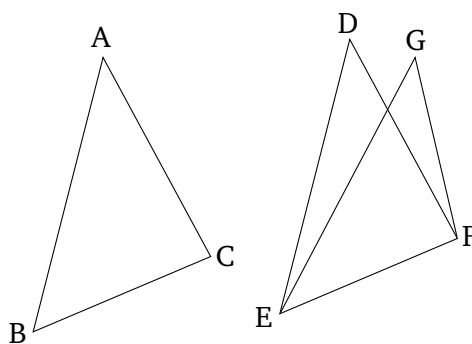
Ἐστω δύο τρίγωνα τὰ  $ABG$ ,  $\Delta EZ$  τὰς δύο πλευρὰς τὰς  $AB$ ,  $AG$  ταῖς δύο πλευραῖς ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $\Delta Z$  ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν μὲν  $AB$  τῇ  $\Delta E$  τὴν δὲ  $AG$  τῇ  $\Delta Z$ · ἐχέτω δὲ καὶ βάσιν τὴν  $BG$  βάσει τῇ  $EZ$  ἴσην· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  ἐστὶν ἴση.

Ἐφαρμοζομένου γὰρ τοῦ  $ABG$  τριγώνου ἐπὶ τὸ  $\Delta EZ$  τρίγωνον καὶ τιθεμένου τοῦ μὲν  $B$  σημείου ἐπὶ τὸ  $E$  σημεῖον τῆς δὲ  $BG$  εὐθείας ἐπὶ τὴν  $EZ$  ἐφαρμόσει καὶ τὸ  $G$  σημεῖον ἐπὶ τὸ  $Z$  διὰ τὸ ἴσην εἶναι τὴν  $BG$  τῇ  $EZ$ · ἐφαρμοσάσης δὲ τῆς  $BG$  ἐπὶ τὴν  $EZ$  ἐφαρμόσουσι καὶ αἱ  $BA$ ,  $GA$  ἐπὶ τὰς  $E\Delta$ ,  $\Delta Z$ . εἰ γὰρ βάσεις μὲν ἡ  $BG$  ἐπὶ βάσιν τὴν  $EZ$  ἐφαρμόσει, αἱ δὲ  $BA$ ,  $AG$  πλευραὶ ἐπὶ τὰς  $E\Delta$ ,  $\Delta Z$  οὐκ ἐφαρμόσουσιν ἀλλὰ παραλλάξουσιν ὡς αἱ  $EH$ ,  $HZ$ , συσταθήσονται ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς εὐθείας δύο ταῖς αὐταῖς εὐθείαις ἄλλαι δύο εὐθεῖαι ἴσαι ἑκατέρα ἑκατέρω πρὸς ἄλλω καὶ ἄλλω σημείῳ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰ αὐτὰ πέρατα ἔχουσαι. οὐ συνίστανται δέ· οὐκ ἄρα ἐφαρμοζομένης τῆς  $BG$  βάσεως ἐπὶ τὴν  $EZ$  βάσιν οὐκ ἐφαρμόσουσι καὶ αἱ  $BA$ ,  $AG$  πλευραὶ ἐπὶ τὰς  $E\Delta$ ,  $\Delta Z$ . ἐφαρμόσουσιν ἄρα· ὥστε καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  ἐπὶ γωνίαν τὴν ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  ἐφαρμόσει καὶ ἴση αὐτῇ ἔσται.

Ἐὰν ἄρα δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευρὰς [ταῖς] δύο πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῇ βάσει ἴσην ἔχη, καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῇ γωνίᾳ ἴσην ἔξει τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

### Proposition 8

If two triangles have two corresponding sides equal, and also have equal bases, then the angles encompassed by the equal straight-lines will also be equal.



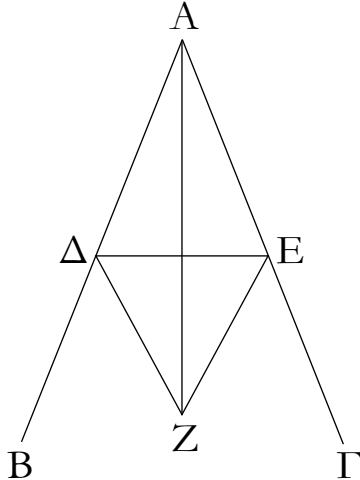
Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles having the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  equal to the two sides  $DE$  and  $DF$ , respectively. (That is)  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . Let them also have the base  $BC$  equal to the base  $EF$ . I say that the angle  $BAC$  is also equal to the angle  $EDF$ .

For if triangle  $ABC$  is applied to triangle  $DEF$ , the point  $B$  being placed on point  $E$ , and the straight-line  $BC$  on  $EF$ , point  $C$  will also coincide with  $F$ , on account of  $BC$  being equal to  $EF$ . So (because of)  $BC$  coinciding with  $EF$ , (the sides)  $BA$  and  $CA$  will also coincide with  $ED$  and  $DF$  (respectively). For if base  $BC$  coincides with base  $EF$ , but the sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  do not coincide with  $ED$  and  $DF$  (respectively), but miss like  $EG$  and  $GF$  (in the above figure), then we will have constructed upon the same straight-line, two other straight-lines equal, respectively, to two (given) straight-lines, and (meeting) at a different point on the same side (of the straight-line), but having the same ends. But (such straight-lines) cannot be constructed [Prop. 1.7]. Thus, the base  $BC$  being applied to the base  $EF$ , the sides  $BA$  and  $AC$  cannot not coincide with  $ED$  and  $DF$  (respectively). Thus, they will coincide. So the angle  $BAC$  will also coincide with angle  $EDF$ , and they will be equal [C.N. 4].

Thus, if two triangles have two corresponding sides equal, and have equal bases, then the angles encompassed by the equal straight-lines will also be equal. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

θ'.

Τὴν δοθεῖσαν γωνίαν εὐθύγραμμον δίχα τεμεῖν.



Ἐστω ἡ δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ. δεῖ δὴ αὐτὴν δίχα τεμεῖν.

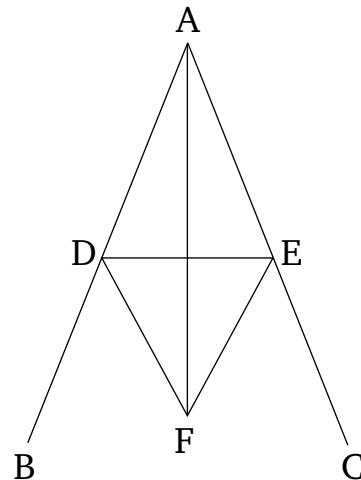
Εἰλήφθω ἐπὶ τῆς ΑΒ τυχὸν σημεῖον τὸ Δ, καὶ ἀφηρήσθω ἀπὸ τῆς ΑΓ τῆ ΑΔ ἴση ἢ ΑΕ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἢ ΔΕ, καὶ συνεστάτω ἐπὶ τῆς ΔΕ τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον τὸ ΔΕΖ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἢ ΑΖ· λέγω, ὅτι ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ γωνία δίχα τέτμηται ὑπὸ τῆς ΑΖ εὐθείας.

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ ΑΔ τῆ ΑΕ, κοινὴ δὲ ἢ ΑΖ, δύο δὴ αἱ ΔΑ, ΑΖ δυσὶ ταῖς ΕΑ, ΑΖ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω. καὶ βάσις ἢ ΔΖ βάσει τῆ ΕΖ ἴση ἐστίν· γωνία ἄρα ἢ ὑπὸ ΔΑΖ γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ ΕΑΖ ἴση ἐστίν.

Ἡ ἄρα δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἢ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ δίχα τέτμηται ὑπὸ τῆς ΑΖ εὐθείας· ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

Proposition 9

To cut a given rectilinear angle in half.



Let  $BAC$  be the given rectilinear angle. So it is required to cut it in half.

Let the point  $D$  have been taken somewhere on  $AB$ , and let  $AE$ , equal to  $AD$ , have been cut off from  $AC$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $DE$  have been joined. And let the equilateral triangle  $DEF$  have been constructed upon  $DE$  [Prop. 1.1], and let  $AF$  have been joined. I say that the angle  $BAC$  has been cut in half by the straight-line  $AF$ .

For since  $AD$  is equal to  $AE$ , and  $AF$  is common, the two (straight-lines)  $DA$ ,  $AF$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $EA$ ,  $AF$ , respectively. And the base  $DF$  is equal to the base  $EF$ . Thus, angle  $DAF$  is equal to angle  $EAF$  [Prop. 1.8].

Thus, the given rectilinear angle  $BAC$  has been cut in half by the straight-line  $AF$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

ι'.

Τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν πεπερασμένην δίχα τεμεῖν.

Ἐστω ἡ δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα πεπερασμένη ἢ ΑΒ· δεῖ δὴ τὴν ΑΒ εὐθεῖαν πεπερασμένην δίχα τεμεῖν.

Συνεστάτω ἐπ' αὐτῆς τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον τὸ ΑΒΓ, καὶ τετμήσθω ἢ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ γωνία δίχα τῆ ΓΔ εὐθείας· λέγω, ὅτι ἢ ΑΒ εὐθεῖα δίχα τέτμηται κατὰ τὸ Δ σημεῖον.

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ ΑΓ τῆ ΓΒ, κοινὴ δὲ ἢ ΓΔ, δύο δὴ αἱ ΑΓ, ΓΔ δύο ταῖς ΒΓ, ΓΔ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ ΒΓΔ ἴση ἐστίν· βάσις ἄρα ἢ ΑΔ βάσει τῆ ΒΔ ἴση ἐστίν.

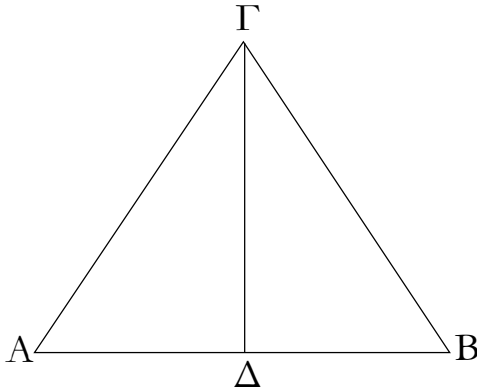
Proposition 10

To cut a given finite straight-line in half.

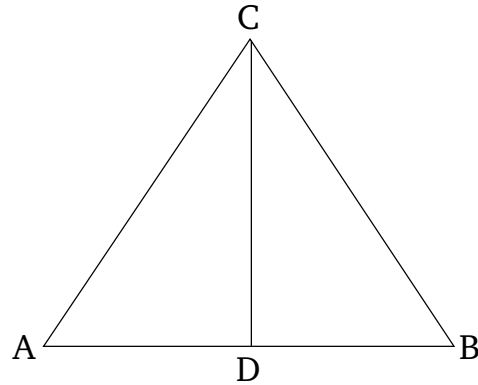
Let  $AB$  be the given finite straight-line. So it is required to cut the finite straight-line  $AB$  in half.

Let the equilateral triangle  $ABC$  have been constructed upon  $(AB)$  [Prop. 1.1], and let the angle  $ACB$  have been cut in half by the straight-line  $CD$  [Prop. 1.9]. I say that the straight-line  $AB$  has been cut in half at point  $D$ .

For since  $AC$  is equal to  $CB$ , and  $CD$  (is) common, the two (straight-lines)  $AC$ ,  $CD$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $BC$ ,  $CD$ , respectively. And the angle  $ACD$  is equal to the angle  $BCD$ . Thus, the base  $AD$  is equal to the base  $BD$  [Prop. 1.4].



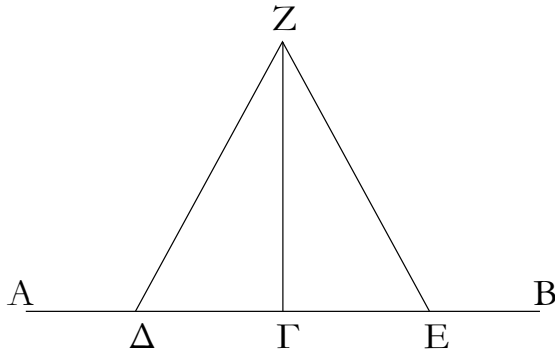
Ἡ ἄρα δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα πεπερασμένη ἢ  $AB$  δίχα τέμνεται κατὰ τὸ  $\Delta$ . ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.



Thus, the given finite straight-line  $AB$  has been cut in half at (point)  $D$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

ια'.

ΠΤῆ δοθείση εὐθεῖα ἀπὸ τοῦ πρὸς αὐτῇ δοθέντος σημείου πρὸς ὀρθὰς γωνίας εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.



Ἐστω ἢ μὲν δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἢ  $AB$  τὸ δὲ δοθὲν σημεῖον ἐπ' αὐτῆς τὸ  $\Gamma$ . δεῖ δὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ  $\Gamma$  σημείου τῆ  $AB$  εὐθεῖα πρὸς ὀρθὰς γωνίας εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

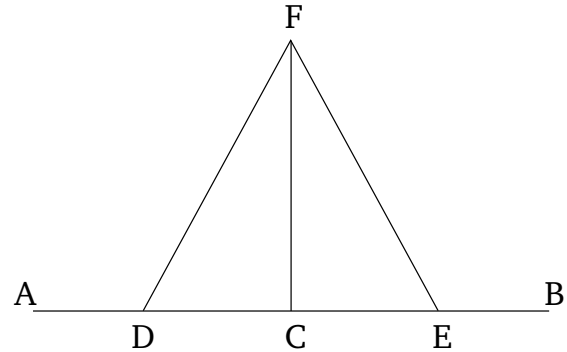
Εἰλήφθω ἐπὶ τῆς  $A\Gamma$  τυχὸν σημεῖον τὸ  $\Delta$ , καὶ κείσθω τῆ  $\Gamma\Delta$  ἴση ἢ  $\Gamma E$ , καὶ συνεστάτω ἐπὶ τῆς  $\Delta E$  τρίγωνον ἰσόπλευρον τὸ  $Z\Delta E$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἢ  $Z\Gamma$ . λέγω, ὅτι τῆ δοθείση εὐθεῖα τῆ  $AB$  ἀπὸ τοῦ πρὸς αὐτῇ δοθέντος σημείου τοῦ  $\Gamma$  πρὸς ὀρθὰς γωνίας εὐθεῖα γραμμὴ ἦκται ἢ  $Z\Gamma$ .

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ  $\Delta\Gamma$  τῆ  $\Gamma E$ , κοινὴ δὲ ἢ  $\Gamma Z$ , δύο δὴ αἰ  $\Delta\Gamma$ ,  $\Gamma Z$  δυοῖ ταῖς  $E\Gamma$ ,  $\Gamma Z$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ βάσις ἢ  $\Delta Z$  βάσει τῆ  $Z E$  ἴση ἐστὶν· γωνία ἄρα ἢ ὑπὸ  $\Delta\Gamma Z$  γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ  $E\Gamma Z$  ἴση ἐστὶν· καὶ εἰσὶν ἐφεξῆς. ὅταν δὲ εὐθεῖα ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν σταθεῖσα τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιῆ, ὀρθὴ ἑκατέρω τῶν ἴσων γωνιῶν ἐστὶν· ὀρθὴ ἄρα ἐστὶν ἑκατέρω τῶν ὑπὸ  $\Delta\Gamma Z$ ,  $Z\Gamma E$ .

Τῆ ἄρα δοθείση εὐθεῖα τῆ  $AB$  ἀπὸ τοῦ πρὸς αὐτῇ δοθέντος σημείου τοῦ  $\Gamma$  πρὸς ὀρθὰς γωνίας εὐθεῖα γραμμὴ ἦκται ἢ  $\Gamma Z$ . ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

Proposition 11

To draw a straight-line at right-angles to a given straight-line from a given point on it.



Let  $AB$  be the given straight-line, and  $C$  the given point on it. So it is required to draw a straight-line from the point  $C$  at right-angles to the straight-line  $AB$ .

Let the point  $D$  be have been taken somewhere on  $AC$ , and let  $CE$  be made equal to  $CD$  [Prop. 1.3], and let the equilateral triangle  $FDE$  have been constructed on  $DE$  [Prop. 1.1], and let  $FC$  have been joined. I say that the straight-line  $FC$  has been drawn at right-angles to the given straight-line  $AB$  from the given point  $C$  on it.

For since  $DC$  is equal to  $CE$ , and  $CF$  is common, the two (straight-lines)  $DC$ ,  $CF$  are equal to the two (straight-lines),  $EC$ ,  $CF$ , respectively. And the base  $DF$  is equal to the base  $FE$ . Thus, the angle  $DCF$  is equal to the angle  $ECF$  [Prop. 1.8], and they are adjacent. But when a straight-line stood on a(nother) straight-line makes the adjacent angles equal to one another, each of the equal angles is a right-angle [Def. 1.10]. Thus, each of the (angles)  $DCF$  and  $FCE$  is a right-angle.

Thus, the straight-line  $CF$  has been drawn at right-

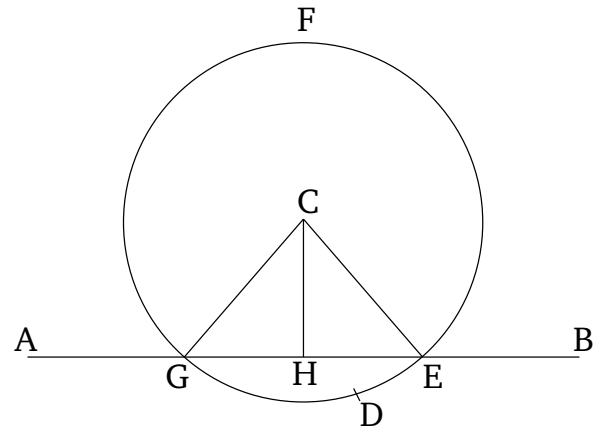
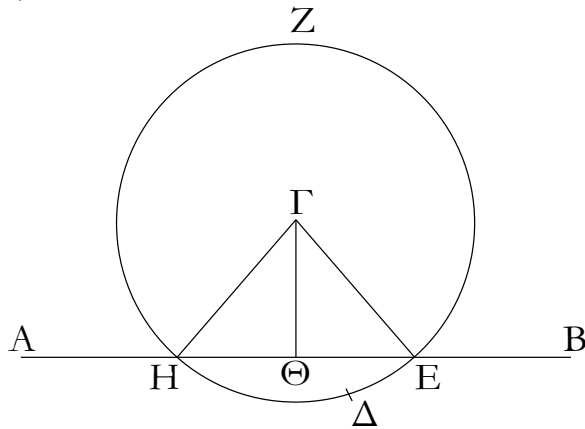
angles to the given straight-line  $AB$  from the given point  $C$  on it. (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

ιβ'.

Proposition 12

Ἐπὶ τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν ἄπειρον ἀπὸ τοῦ δοθέντος σημείου, ὃ μὴ ἐστὶν ἐπ' αὐτῆς, κάθετον εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

To draw a straight-line perpendicular to a given infinite straight-line from a given point which is not on it.



Ἐστω ἡ μὲν δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἄπειρος ἡ  $AB$  τὸ δὲ δοθὲν σημεῖον, ὃ μὴ ἐστὶν ἐπ' αὐτῆς, τὸ  $\Gamma$ . δεῖ δὴ ἐπὶ τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν ἄπειρον τὴν  $AB$  ἀπὸ τοῦ δοθέντος σημείου τοῦ  $\Gamma$ , ὃ μὴ ἐστὶν ἐπ' αὐτῆς, κάθετον εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

Let  $AB$  be the given infinite straight-line and  $C$  the given point, which is not on  $(AB)$ . So it is required to draw a straight-line perpendicular to the given infinite straight-line  $AB$  from the given point  $C$ , which is not on  $(AB)$ .

Εἰλήφθω γὰρ ἐπὶ τὰ ἕτερα μέρη τῆς  $AB$  εὐθείας τυχὸν σημεῖον τὸ  $\Delta$ , καὶ κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ  $\Gamma$  διαστήματι δὲ τῷ  $\Gamma\Delta$  κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ  $EZH$ , καὶ τετμήσθω ἡ  $EH$  εὐθεῖα δίχα κατὰ τὸ  $\Theta$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθωσαν αἱ  $GH$ ,  $\Gamma\Theta$ ,  $\Gamma E$  εὐθεῖαι· λέγω, ὅτι ἐπὶ τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν ἄπειρον τὴν  $AB$  ἀπὸ τοῦ δοθέντος σημείου τοῦ  $\Gamma$ , ὃ μὴ ἐστὶν ἐπ' αὐτῆς, κάθετος ἦκται ἡ  $\Gamma\Theta$ .

For let point  $D$  have been taken somewhere on the other side (to  $C$ ) of the straight-line  $AB$ , and let the circle  $EFG$  have been drawn with center  $C$  and radius  $CD$  [Post. 3], and let the straight-line  $EG$  have been cut in half at (point)  $H$  [Prop. 1.10], and let the straight-lines  $CG$ ,  $CH$ , and  $CE$  have been joined. I say that a (straight-line)  $CH$  has been drawn perpendicular to the given infinite straight-line  $AB$  from the given point  $C$ , which is not on  $(AB)$ .

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $H\Theta$  τῇ  $\Theta E$ , κοινὴ δὲ ἡ  $\Theta\Gamma$ , δύο δὴ αἱ  $H\Theta$ ,  $\Theta\Gamma$  δύο ταῖς  $E\Theta$ ,  $\Theta\Gamma$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρωθεν· καὶ βάσις ἡ  $GH$  βάσει τῇ  $GE$  ἐστὶν ἴση· γωνία ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma\Theta H$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $E\Theta\Gamma$  ἐστὶν ἴση. καὶ εἰσὶν ἐφεξῆς. ὅταν δὲ εὐθεῖα ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν σταθεῖσα τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιῇ, ὀρθὴ ἑκατέρωθεν τῶν ἴσων γωνιῶν ἐστὶν, καὶ ἡ ἐφ' ἑσστηκυῖα εὐθεῖα κάθετος καλεῖται ἐφ' ἣν ἐφέστηκεν.

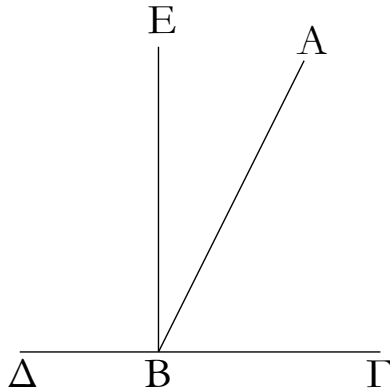
For since  $GH$  is equal to  $HE$ , and  $HC$  (is) common, the two (straight-lines)  $GH$ ,  $HC$  are equal to the two straight-lines  $EH$ ,  $HC$ , respectively, and the base  $CG$  is equal to the base  $CE$ . Thus, the angle  $CHG$  is equal to the angle  $EHC$  [Prop. 1.8], and they are adjacent. But when a straight-line stood on a(nother) straight-line makes the adjacent angles equal to one another, each of the equal angles is a right-angle, and the former straight-line is called perpendicular to that upon which it stands [Def. 1.10].

Ἐπὶ τὴν δοθεῖσαν ἄρα εὐθεῖαν ἄπειρον τὴν  $AB$  ἀπὸ τοῦ δοθέντος σημείου τοῦ  $\Gamma$ , ὃ μὴ ἐστὶν ἐπ' αὐτῆς, κάθετος ἦκται ἡ  $\Gamma\Theta$ · ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

Thus, the (straight-line)  $CH$  has been drawn perpendicular to the given infinite straight-line  $AB$  from the given point  $C$ , which is not on  $(AB)$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

ιγ'.

Ἐὰν εὐθεῖα ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν σταθεῖσα γωνίας ποιῇ, ἦτοι δύο ὀρθὰς ἢ δυοὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιήσῃ.



Εὐθεῖα γάρ τις ἢ  $AB$  ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν τὴν  $\Gamma\Delta$  σταθεῖσα γωνίας ποιείτω τὰς ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BA$ ,  $AB\Delta$ . λέγω, ὅτι αἱ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BA$ ,  $AB\Delta$  γωνίαι ἦτοι δύο ὀρθαὶ εἰσὶν ἢ δυοὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι.

Εἰ μὲν οὖν ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BA$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $AB\Delta$ , δύο ὀρθαὶ εἰσὶν. εἰ δὲ οὐ, ἤχθω ἀπὸ τοῦ  $B$  σημείου τῇ  $\Gamma\Delta$  [εὐθείᾳ] πρὸς ὀρθὰς ἡ  $BE$ . αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$ ,  $EBA$  δύο ὀρθαὶ εἰσὶν· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$  δυοὶ ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BA$ ,  $ABE$  ἴση ἐστίν, κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $EBA$ . αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$ ,  $EBA$  τρισι ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BA$ ,  $ABE$ ,  $EBA$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta BA$  δυοὶ ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Delta BE$ ,  $EBA$  ἴση ἐστίν, κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $ABE$ . αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $\Delta BA$ ,  $ABE$  τρισι ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Delta BE$ ,  $EBA$ ,  $ABE$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν. ἐδείχθησαν δὲ καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$ ,  $EBA$  τρισι ταῖς αὐταῖς ἴσαι· τὰ δὲ τῶ αὐτῶ ἴσα καὶ ἀλλήλοισ ἐστὶν ἴσα· καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$ ,  $EBA$  ἄρα ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Delta BA$ ,  $ABE$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν· ἀλλὰ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\Gamma BE$ ,  $EBA$  δύο ὀρθαὶ εἰσὶν καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\Delta BA$ ,  $ABE$  ἄρα δυοὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσὶν.

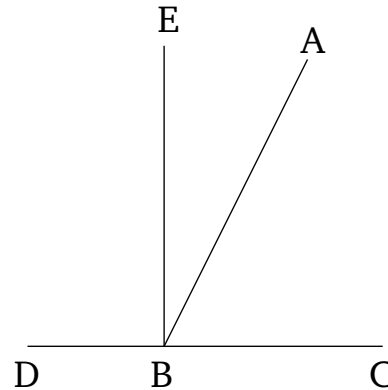
Ἐὰν ἄρα εὐθεῖα ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν σταθεῖσα γωνίας ποιῇ, ἦτοι δύο ὀρθὰς ἢ δυοὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιήσῃ· ὅπερ εἶδει δεῖξαι.

ιδ'.

Ἐὰν πρὸς τιμὴν εὐθεῖα καὶ τῶ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείω δύο εὐθεῖαι μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη κείμεναι τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας

Proposition 13

If a straight-line stood on a(nother) straight-line makes angles, it will certainly either make two right-angles, or (angles whose sum is) equal to two right-angles.



For let some straight-line  $AB$  stood on the straight-line  $CD$  make the angles  $CBA$  and  $ABD$ . I say that the angles  $CBA$  and  $ABD$  are certainly either two right-angles, or (have a sum) equal to two right-angles.

In fact, if  $CBA$  is equal to  $ABD$  then they are two right-angles [Def. 1.10]. But, if not, let  $BE$  have been drawn from the point  $B$  at right-angles to [the straight-line]  $CD$  [Prop. 1.11]. Thus,  $CBE$  and  $EBD$  are two right-angles. And since  $CBE$  is equal to the two (angles)  $CBA$  and  $ABE$ , let  $EBD$  have been added to both. Thus, the (sum of the angles)  $CBE$  and  $EBD$  is equal to the (sum of the) three (angles)  $CBA$ ,  $ABE$ , and  $EBD$  [C.N. 2]. Again, since  $DBA$  is equal to the two (angles)  $DBE$  and  $EBA$ , let  $ABC$  have been added to both. Thus, the (sum of the angles)  $DBA$  and  $ABC$  is equal to the (sum of the) three (angles)  $DBE$ ,  $EBA$ , and  $ABC$  [C.N. 2]. But (the sum of)  $CBE$  and  $EBD$  was also shown (to be) equal to the (sum of the) same three (angles). And things equal to the same thing are also equal to one another [C.N. 1]. Therefore, (the sum of)  $CBE$  and  $EBD$  is also equal to (the sum of)  $DBA$  and  $ABC$ . But, (the sum of)  $CBE$  and  $EBD$  is two right-angles. Thus, (the sum of)  $ABD$  and  $ABC$  is also equal to two right-angles.

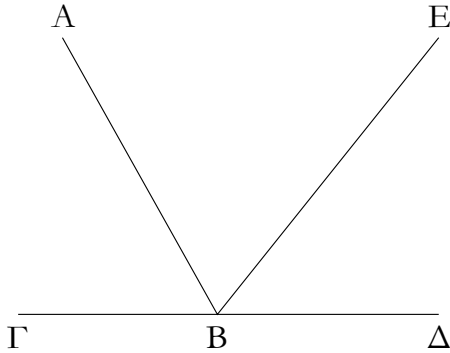
Thus, if a straight-line stood on a(nother) straight-line makes angles, it will certainly either make two right-angles, or (angles whose sum is) equal to two right-angles. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 14

If two straight-lines, not lying on the same side, make adjacent angles (whose sum is) equal to two right-angles



δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιῶσιν, ἐπ' εὐθείας ἔσσονται ἀλλήλαις αἰ εὐθεῖαι.



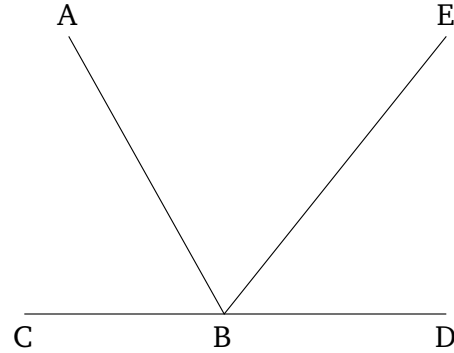
Πρὸς γάρ τινι εὐθείᾳ τῇ  $AB$  καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $B$  δύο εὐθεῖαι αἰ  $BΓ$ ,  $BD$  μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη κείμεναι τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ  $ABΓ$ ,  $ABD$  δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιείτωσαν· λέγω, ὅτι ἐπ' εὐθείας ἐστὶ τῇ  $ΓB$  ἢ  $BD$ .

Εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἐστὶ τῇ  $BΓ$  ἐπ' εὐθείας ἢ  $BD$ , ἔστω τῇ  $ΓB$  ἐπ' εὐθείας ἢ  $BE$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν εὐθεῖα ἢ  $AB$  ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν τὴν  $ΓBE$  ἐφέστηκεν, αἰ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $ABΓ$ ,  $ABE$  γωνίαι δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσὶν· εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ αἰ ὑπὸ  $ABΓ$ ,  $ABD$  δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι· αἰ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $ΓBA$ ,  $ABE$  ταῖς ὑπὸ  $ΓBA$ ,  $ABD$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν. κοινὴ ἀφηρήσθω ἢ ὑπὸ  $ΓBA$ · λοιπὴ ἄρα ἢ ὑπὸ  $ABE$  λοιπῇ τῇ ὑπὸ  $ABD$  ἐστὶν ἴση, ἢ ἐλάσσων τῇ μείζον· ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύνατον. οὐκ ἄρα ἐπ' εὐθείας ἐστὶν ἢ  $BE$  τῇ  $ΓB$ . ὁμοίως δὲ δείξομεν, ὅτι οὐδὲ ἄλλη τις πλὴν τῆς  $BD$ · ἐπ' εὐθείας ἄρα ἐστὶν ἢ  $ΓB$  τῇ  $BD$ .

Ἐὰν ἄρα πρὸς τινι εὐθείᾳ καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ δύο εὐθεῖαι μὴ ἐπὶ αὐτὰ μέρη κείμεναι τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιῶσιν, ἐπ' εὐθείας ἔσσονται ἀλλήλαις αἰ εὐθεῖαι· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

at the same point on some straight-line, then the two straight-lines will be straight-on (with respect) to one another.



For let two straight-lines  $BC$  and  $BD$ , not lying on the same side, make adjacent angles  $ABC$  and  $ABD$  (whose sum is) equal to two right-angles at the same point  $B$  on some straight-line  $AB$ . I say that  $BD$  is straight-on with respect to  $CB$ .

For if  $BD$  is not straight-on to  $BC$  then let  $BE$  be straight-on to  $CB$ .

Therefore, since the straight-line  $AB$  stands on the straight-line  $CBE$ , the (sum of the) angles  $ABC$  and  $ABE$  is thus equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13]. But (the sum of)  $ABC$  and  $ABD$  is also equal to two right-angles. Thus, (the sum of angles)  $CBA$  and  $ABE$  is equal to (the sum of angles)  $CBA$  and  $ABD$  [C.N. 1]. Let (angle)  $CBA$  have been subtracted from both. Thus, the remainder  $ABE$  is equal to the remainder  $ABD$  [C.N. 3], the lesser to the greater. The very thing is impossible. Thus,  $BE$  is not straight-on with respect to  $CB$ . Similarly, we can show that neither (is) any other (straight-line) than  $BD$ . Thus,  $CB$  is straight-on with respect to  $BD$ .

Thus, if two straight-lines, not lying on the same side, make adjacent angles (whose sum is) equal to two right-angles at the same point on some straight-line, then the two straight-lines will be straight-on (with respect) to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

ιε'.

### Proposition 15

Ἐὰν δύο εὐθεῖαι τέμνωσιν ἀλλήλας, τὰς κατὰ κορυφὴν γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιούσιν.

Δύο γὰρ εὐθεῖαι αἰ  $AB$ ,  $CD$  τεμνέτωσαν ἀλλήλας κατὰ τὸ  $E$  σημείον· λέγω, ὅτι ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ μὲν ὑπὸ  $AEG$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $DEB$ , ἢ δὲ ὑπὸ  $GEB$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $AED$ .

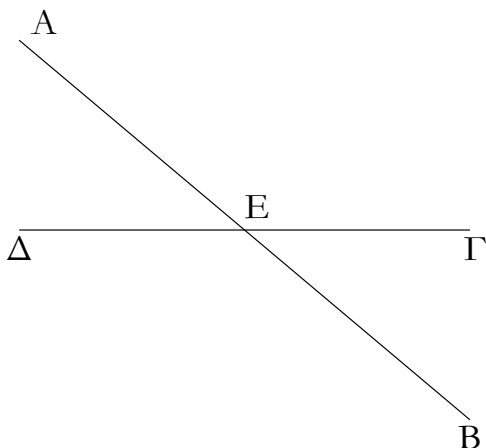
Ἐπεὶ γὰρ εὐθεῖα ἢ  $AE$  ἐπ' εὐθεῖαν τὴν  $CD$  ἐφέστηκε γωνίας ποιούσα τὰς ὑπὸ  $GEA$ ,  $AED$ , αἰ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $GEA$ ,  $AED$  γωνίαι δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσὶν. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ εὐθεῖα

If two straight-lines cut one another then they make the vertically opposite angles equal to one another.

For let the two straight-lines  $AB$  and  $CD$  cut one another at the point  $E$ . I say that angle  $AEC$  is equal to (angle)  $DEB$ , and (angle)  $CEB$  to (angle)  $AED$ .

For since the straight-line  $AE$  stands on the straight-line  $CD$ , making the angles  $CEA$  and  $AED$ , the (sum of the) angles  $CEA$  and  $AED$  is thus equal to two right-

ἢ ΔΕ ἐπ' εὐθείᾳ τὴν ΑΒ ἐφέστηκε γωνίας ποιούσα τὰς ὑπὸ ΑΕΔ, ΔΕΒ, αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΑΕΔ, ΔΕΒ γωνίαι δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν. ἐδείχθησαν δὲ καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ ΓΕΑ, ΑΕΔ δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι· αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΓΕΑ, ΑΕΔ ταῖς ὑπὸ ΑΕΔ, ΔΕΒ ἴσαι εἰσίν. κοινὴ ἀφηρήσθω ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΕΔ· λοιπὴ ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΓΕΑ λοιπῇ τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΕΔ ἴση ἐστίν· ὁμοίως δὲ δειχθήσεται, ὅτι καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ ΓΕΒ, ΔΕΑ ἴσαι εἰσίν.



Ἐὰν ἄρα δύο εὐθεῖαι τέμνωσιν ἀλλήλας, τὰς κατὰ κορυφὴν γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιούσιν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

ις'.

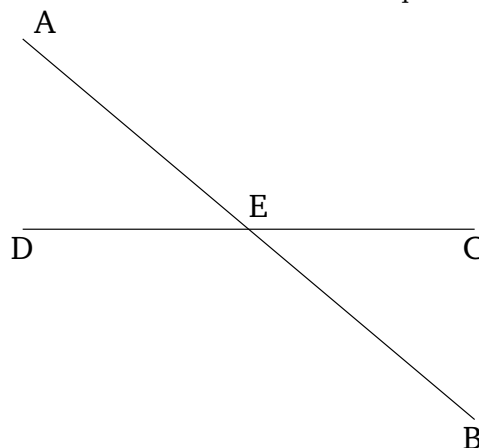
Παντὸς τριγώνου μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν προσεκβληθείσης ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἑκατέρας τῶν ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον γωνιῶν μείζων ἐστίν.

Ἐστω τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ, καὶ προσεκβεβλήσθω αὐτοῦ μία πλευρὰ ἡ ΒΓ ἐπὶ τὸ Δ· λέγω, ὅτι ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ μείζων ἐστίν ἑκατέρας τῶν ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῶν ὑπὸ ΓΒΑ, ΒΑΓ γωνιῶν.

Τετμήσθω ἡ ΑΓ δίχα κατὰ τὸ Ε, καὶ ἐπιζευχθεῖσα ἡ ΒΕ ἐκβεβλήσθω ἐπ' εὐθείας ἐπὶ τὸ Ζ, καὶ κείσθω τῇ ΒΕ ἴση ἡ ΕΖ, καὶ ἐπεξεύχθω ἡ ΖΓ, καὶ διήχθω ἡ ΑΓ ἐπὶ τὸ Η.

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἐστίν ἡ μὲν ΑΕ τῇ ΕΓ, ἡ δὲ ΒΕ τῇ ΕΖ, δύο δὲ αἱ ΑΕ, ΕΒ δυσὶ ταῖς ΓΕ, ΕΖ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρᾳ ἑκατέρᾳ· καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΕΒ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΖΕΓ ἴση ἐστίν· κατὰ κορυφὴν γὰρ· βάσις ἄρα ἡ ΑΒ βάσει τῇ ΖΓ ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ ΑΒΕ τρίγωνον τῷ ΖΕΓ τριγώνῳ ἐστίν ἴσον, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρᾳ ἑκατέρᾳ, ὅψ' ἄς αἱ ἴσας πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν· ἴση ἄρα ἐστίν ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΑΕ τῇ ὑπὸ ΕΓΖ. μείζων δὲ ἐστίν ἡ ὑπὸ ΕΓΔ τῆς ὑπὸ ΕΓΖ· μείζων ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ τῆς ὑπὸ ΒΑΕ. Ὅμοίως δὲ τῆς ΒΓ τετμημένης δίχα δειχθήσεται

angles [Prop. 1.13]. Again, since the straight-line  $DE$  stands on the straight-line  $AB$ , making the angles  $AED$  and  $DEB$ , the (sum of the) angles  $AED$  and  $DEB$  is thus equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13]. But (the sum of)  $CEA$  and  $AED$  was also shown (to be) equal to two right-angles. Thus, (the sum of)  $CEA$  and  $AED$  is equal to (the sum of)  $AED$  and  $DEB$  [C.N. 1]. Let  $AED$  have been subtracted from both. Thus, the remainder  $CEA$  is equal to the remainder  $DEB$  [C.N. 3]. Similarly, it can be shown that  $CEB$  and  $DEA$  are also equal.



Thus, if two straight-lines cut one another then they make the vertically opposite angles equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

### Proposition 16

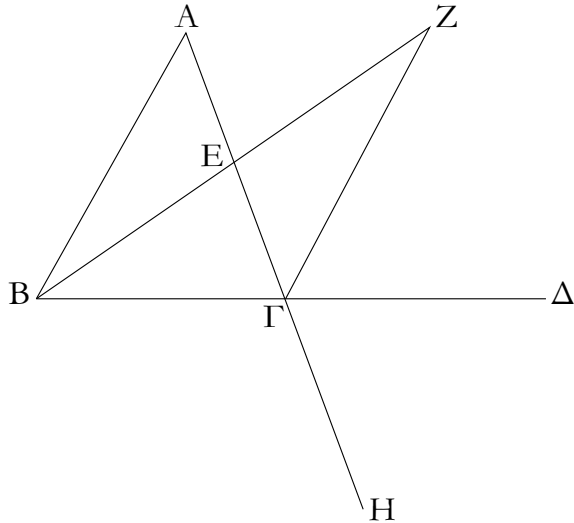
For any triangle, when one of the sides is produced, the external angle is greater than each of the internal and opposite angles.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and let one of its sides  $BC$  have been produced to  $D$ . I say that the external angle  $ACD$  is greater than each of the internal and opposite angles,  $CBA$  and  $BAC$ .

Let the (straight-line)  $AC$  have been cut in half at (point)  $E$  [Prop. 1.10]. And  $BE$  being joined, let it have been produced in a straight-line to (point)  $F$ .<sup>†</sup> And let  $EF$  be made equal to  $BE$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $FC$  have been joined, and let  $AC$  have been drawn through to (point)  $G$ .

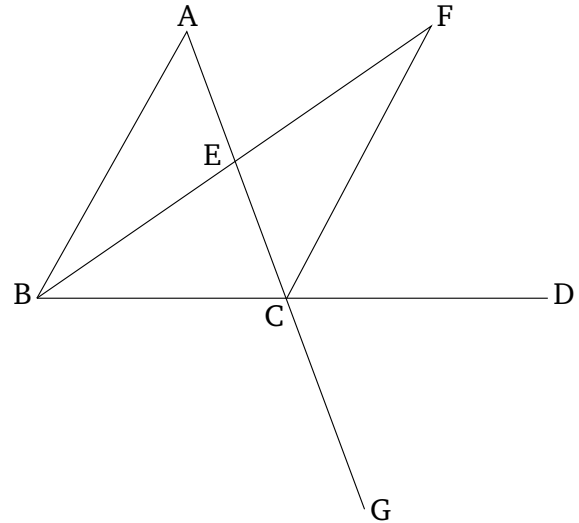
Therefore, since  $AE$  is equal to  $EC$ , and  $BE$  to  $EF$ , the two (straight-lines)  $AE$ ,  $EB$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $CE$ ,  $EF$ , respectively. Also, angle  $AEB$  is equal to angle  $FEC$ , for (they are) vertically opposite [Prop. 1.15]. Thus, the base  $AB$  is equal to the base  $FC$ , and the triangle  $ABE$  is equal to the triangle  $FEC$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides are equal to the corresponding remaining angles [Prop. 1.4].

καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΓΗ, τουτέστιν ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ, μείζων καὶ τῆς ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ.



Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν προσεκβληθείσης ἢ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἑκατέρας τῶν ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον γωνιῶν μείζων ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

Thus,  $BAE$  is equal to  $ECF$ . But  $ECD$  is greater than  $ECF$ . Thus,  $ACD$  is greater than  $BAE$ . Similarly, by having cut  $BC$  in half, it can be shown (that)  $BCG$ —that is to say,  $ACD$ —(is) also greater than  $ABC$ .

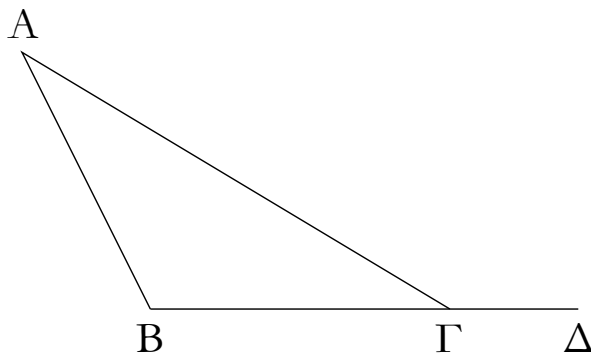


Thus, for any triangle, when one of the sides is produced, the external angle is greater than each of the internal and opposite angles. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

† The implicit assumption that the point  $F$  lies in the interior of the angle  $ABC$  should be counted as an additional postulate.

ιζ'.

Παντὸς τριγώνου αἱ δύο γωνίαι δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσι πάντῃ μεταλαμβάνόμεναι.



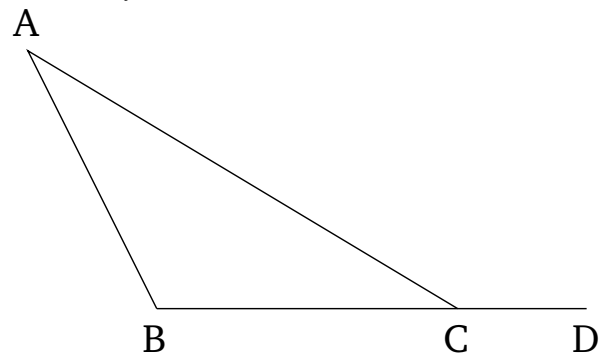
Ἐστω τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ· λέγω, ὅτι τοῦ ΑΒΓ τριγώνου αἱ δύο γωνίαι δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάττονές εἰσι πάντῃ μεταλαμβάνόμεναι.

Ἐκβεβλήσθω γὰρ ἡ ΒΓ ἐπὶ τὸ Δ.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ τριγώνου τοῦ ΑΒΓ ἐκτὸς ἐστὶ γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ, μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῆς ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ· κοινῇ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ· αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ, ΑΓΒ τῶν ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΑ μείζονές εἰσιν. ἀλλ' αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ,

Proposition 17

For any triangle, (the sum of any) two angles is less than two right-angles, (the angles) being taken up in any (possible way).



Let  $ABC$  be a triangle. I say that (the sum of any) two angles of triangle  $ABC$  is less than two right-angles, (the angles) being taken up in any (possible way).

For let  $BC$  have been produced to  $D$ .

And since the angle  $ACD$  is external to triangle  $ABC$ , it is greater than the internal and opposite angle  $ABC$  [Prop. 1.16]. Let  $ACB$  have been added to both. Thus, the (sum of the angles)  $ACD$  and  $ACB$  is greater than

ΑΓΒ δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΑ δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσιν. ὁμοίως δὴ δείξομεν, ὅτι καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ, ΑΓΒ δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσι καὶ ἔτι αἱ ὑπὸ ΓΑΒ, ΑΒΓ.

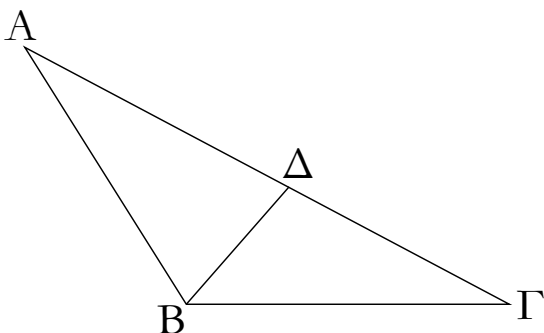
Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου αἱ δύο γωνίαι δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσι πάντῃ μεταλαμβανόμεναι· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

the (sum of the angles)  $ABC$  and  $BCA$ . But, (the sum of)  $ACD$  and  $ACB$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13]. Thus, (the sum of)  $ABC$  and  $BCA$  is less than two right-angles. Similarly, we can show that (the sum of)  $BAC$  and  $ACB$  is also less than two right-angles, and again (that the sum of)  $CAB$  and  $ABC$  (is less than two right-angles).

Thus, for any triangle, (the sum of any) two angles is less than two right-angles, (the angles) being taken up in any (possible way). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

ιη'.

Παντὸς τριγώνου ἡ μείζων πλευρὰ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ὑποτείνει.



Ἐστω γὰρ τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ μείζονα ἔχον τὴν ΑΓ πλευρὰν τῆς ΑΒ· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ ΒΓΑ·

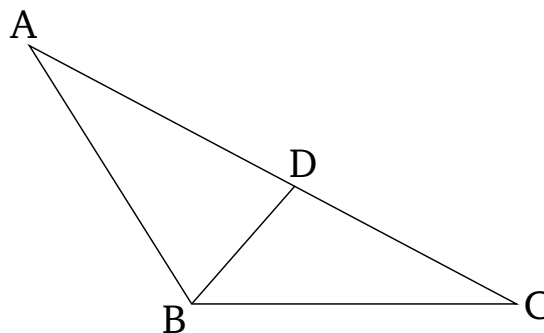
Ἐπεὶ γὰρ μείζων ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ τῆς ΑΒ, κείσθω τῇ ΑΒ ἴση ἡ ΑΔ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΒΔ.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ τριγώνου τοῦ ΒΓΔ ἐκτός ἐστι γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΔΒ, μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ἐντός καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῆς ὑπὸ ΔΓΒ· ἴση δὲ ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΔΒ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΒΔ, ἐπεὶ καὶ πλευρὰ ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΑΔ ἐστὶν ἴση· μείζων ἄρα καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΔ τῆς ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ· πολλῶν ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ.

Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου ἡ μείζων πλευρὰ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ὑποτείνει· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

Proposition 18

For any triangle, the greater side subtends the greater angle.



For let  $ABC$  be a triangle having side  $AC$  greater than  $AB$ . I say that angle  $ABC$  is also greater than  $BCA$ .

For since  $AC$  is greater than  $AB$ , let  $AD$  be made equal to  $AB$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $BD$  have been joined.

And since angle  $ADB$  is external to triangle  $BCD$ , it is greater than the internal and opposite (angle)  $DCB$  [Prop. 1.16]. But  $ADB$  (is) equal to  $ABD$ , since side  $AB$  is also equal to side  $AD$  [Prop. 1.5]. Thus,  $ABD$  is also greater than  $ACB$ . Thus,  $ABC$  is much greater than  $ACB$ .

Thus, for any triangle, the greater side subtends the greater angle. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

ιθ'.

Παντὸς τριγώνου ὑπὸ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ἡ μείζων πλευρὰ ὑποτείνει.

Ἐστω τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ μείζονα ἔχον τὴν ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ γωνίαν τῆς ὑπὸ ΒΓΑ· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ πλευρὰ ἡ ΑΓ πλευρᾶς τῆς ΑΒ μείζων ἐστὶν.

Εἰ γὰρ μή, ἦτοι ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΑΒ ἢ ἐλάσσων· ἴση μὲν οὖν οὐκ ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΑΒ· ἴση γὰρ ἂν ἦν καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ· οὐκ ἐστὶ δέ· οὐκ ἄρα ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΑΒ. οὐδὲ μὴν ἐλάσσων ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ

Proposition 19

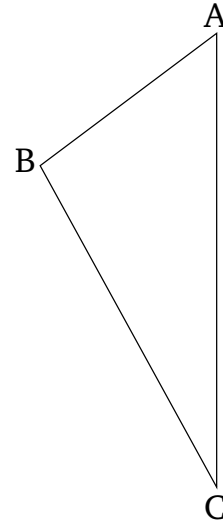
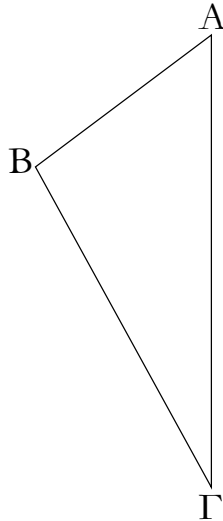
For any triangle, the greater angle is subtended by the greater side.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle having the angle  $ABC$  greater than  $BCA$ . I say that side  $AC$  is also greater than side  $AB$ .

For if not,  $AC$  is certainly either equal to, or less than,  $AB$ . In fact,  $AC$  is not equal to  $AB$ . For then angle  $ABC$  would also have been equal to  $ACB$  [Prop. 1.5]. But it is not. Thus,  $AC$  is not equal to  $AB$ . Neither, indeed, is  $AC$

τῆς  $AB$ : ἐλάσσων γὰρ ἂν ᾔην καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $AB\Gamma$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $AG\beta$ : οὐκ ἔστι δέ· οὐκ ἄρα ἐλάσσων ἐστὶν ἡ  $AG$  τῆς  $AB$ . ἐδείχθη δέ, ὅτι οὐδὲ ἴση ἐστίν. μείζων ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $AG$  τῆς  $AB$ .

less than  $AB$ . For then angle  $ABC$  would also have been less than  $ACB$  [Prop. 1.18]. But it is not. Thus,  $AC$  is not less than  $AB$ . But it was shown that  $(AC)$  is also not equal (to  $AB$ ). Thus,  $AC$  is greater than  $AB$ .



Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου ὑπὸ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ἡ μείζων πλευρὰ ὑποτείνει· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

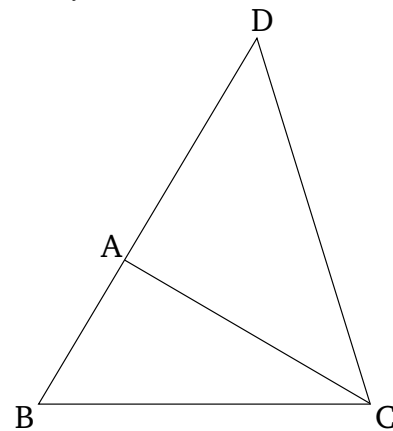
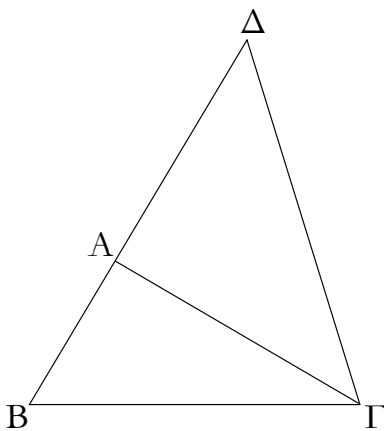
Thus, for any triangle, the greater angle is subtended by the greater side. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

κ'.

Proposition 20

Παντὸς τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονές εἰσι πάντῃ μεταλαμβανόμεναι.

For any triangle, (the sum of any) two sides is greater than the remaining (side), (the sides) being taken up in any (possible way).



Ἐστω γὰρ τρίγωνον τὸ  $AB\Gamma$ : λέγω, ὅτι τοῦ  $AB\Gamma$  τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονές εἰσι παντῇ μεταλαμβανόμεναι, αἱ μὲν  $BA$ ,  $AG$  τῆς  $B\Gamma$ , αἱ δὲ  $AB$ ,  $B\Gamma$  τῆς  $AG$ , αἱ δὲ  $B\Gamma$ ,  $GA$  τῆς  $AB$ .

For let  $ABC$  be a triangle. I say that for triangle  $ABC$  (the sum of any) two sides is greater than the remaining (side), (the sides) being taken up in any (possible way). (So), (the sum of)  $BA$  and  $AC$  (is greater) than  $BC$ , (the sum of)  $AB$  and  $BC$  than  $AC$ , and (the sum of)  $BC$  and  $CA$  than  $AB$ .

Διήχθω γὰρ ἡ  $BA$  ἐπὶ τὸ  $\Delta$  σημεῖον, καὶ κείσθω τῇ  $GA$  ἴση ἡ  $A\Delta$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $\Delta\Gamma$ .

For let  $BA$  have been drawn through to point  $D$ , and let  $AD$  be made equal to  $CA$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $DC$

ὑπὸ  $\Delta\Gamma$ · καὶ ἐπεὶ τρίγωνόν ἐστι τὸ  $\Delta\Gamma\text{B}$  μείζονα ἔχον τὴν ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Gamma\Delta$  γωνίαν τῆς ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Delta\Gamma$ , ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ἢ μείζων πλευρὰ ὑποτείνει, ἢ  $\Delta\text{B}$  ἄρα τῆς  $\text{B}\Gamma$  ἐστὶ μείζων. ἴση δὲ ἡ  $\Delta\text{A}$  τῇ  $\text{A}\Gamma$ · μείζονες ἄρα αἱ  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{A}\Gamma$  τῆς  $\text{B}\Gamma$ · ὁμοίως δὲ δείξομεν, ὅτι καὶ αἱ μὲν  $\text{AB}$ ,  $\text{B}\Gamma$  τῆς  $\Gamma\text{A}$  μείζονες εἰσιν, αἱ δὲ  $\text{B}\Gamma$ ,  $\Gamma\text{A}$  τῆς  $\text{AB}$ .

Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονες εἰσι πάντῃ μεταλαμβάνομεναι· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

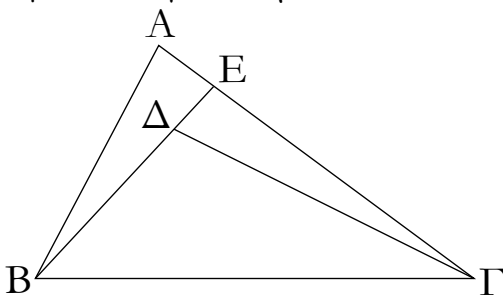
have been joined.

Therefore, since  $DA$  is equal to  $AC$ , the angle  $ADC$  is also equal to  $ACD$  [Prop. 1.5]. Thus,  $BCD$  is greater than  $ADC$ . And since triangle  $DCB$  has the angle  $BCD$  greater than  $BDC$ , and the greater angle subtends the greater side [Prop. 1.19],  $DB$  is thus greater than  $BC$ . But  $DA$  is equal to  $AC$ . Thus, (the sum of)  $BA$  and  $AC$  is greater than  $BC$ . Similarly, we can show that (the sum of)  $AB$  and  $BC$  is also greater than  $CA$ , and (the sum of)  $BC$  and  $CA$  than  $AB$ .

Thus, for any triangle, (the sum of any) two sides is greater than the remaining (side), (the sides) being taken up in any (possible way). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

κα'.

Ἐὰν τριγώνου ἐπὶ μιᾷ τῶν πλευρῶν ἀπὸ τῶν περάτων δύο εὐθεῖαι ἐντὸς συσταθῶσιν, αἱ συσταθεῖσαι τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν ἐλάττωτες μὲν ἔσονται, μείζονα δὲ γωνίαν περιέχουσιν.



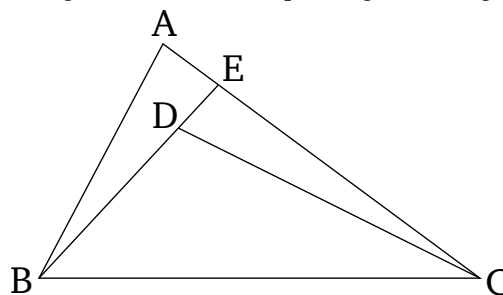
Τριγώνου γὰρ τοῦ  $\text{AB}\Gamma$  ἐπὶ μιᾷ τῶν πλευρῶν τῆς  $\text{B}\Gamma$  ἀπὸ τῶν περάτων τῶν  $\text{B}$ ,  $\Gamma$  δύο εὐθεῖαι ἐντὸς συστατάωσαν αἱ  $\text{B}\Delta$ ,  $\Delta\Gamma$ · λέγω, ὅτι αἱ  $\text{B}\Delta$ ,  $\Delta\Gamma$  τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν τῶν  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{A}\Gamma$  ἐλάσσονες μὲν εἰσιν, μείζονα δὲ γωνίαν περιέχουσι τὴν ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Delta\Gamma$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\text{A}\Gamma$ .

Διήχθω γὰρ ἡ  $\text{B}\Delta$  ἐπὶ τὸ  $\text{E}$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ παντὸς τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονες εἰσιν, τοῦ  $\text{ABE}$  ἄρα τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ αἱ  $\text{AB}$ ,  $\text{AE}$  τῆς  $\text{BE}$  μείζονες εἰσιν· κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ  $\text{E}\Gamma$ · αἱ ἄρα  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{A}\Gamma$  τῶν  $\text{BE}$ ,  $\text{E}\Gamma$  μείζονες εἰσιν. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ τοῦ  $\text{GED}$  τριγώνου αἱ δύο πλευραὶ αἱ  $\text{GE}$ ,  $\text{ED}$  τῆς  $\text{GD}$  μείζονες εἰσιν, κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ  $\Delta\text{B}$ · αἱ  $\text{GE}$ ,  $\text{EB}$  ἄρα τῶν  $\text{GD}$ ,  $\Delta\text{B}$  μείζονες εἰσιν. ἀλλὰ τῶν  $\text{BE}$ ,  $\text{E}\Gamma$  μείζονες ἐδείχθησαν αἱ  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{A}\Gamma$ · πολλῶ ἄρα αἱ  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{A}\Gamma$  τῶν  $\text{B}\Delta$ ,  $\Delta\Gamma$  μείζονες εἰσιν.

Πάλιν, ἐπεὶ παντὸς τριγώνου ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία τῆς ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον μείζων ἐστίν, τοῦ  $\text{G}\Delta\text{E}$  ἄρα τριγώνου ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Delta\Gamma$  μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ  $\text{G}\Delta\text{E}$ . διὰ ταῦτά τοίνυν καὶ τοῦ  $\text{ABE}$  τριγώνου ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ  $\text{G}\text{E}\text{B}$  μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\text{A}\Gamma$ . ἀλλὰ τῆς ὑπὸ  $\text{G}\text{E}\text{B}$  μείζων ἐδείχθη ἢ ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Delta\Gamma$ · πολλῶ ἄρα ἢ ὑπὸ  $\text{B}\Delta\Gamma$

### Proposition 21

If two internal straight-lines are constructed on one of the sides of a triangle, from its ends, the constructed (straight-lines) will be less than the two remaining sides of the triangle, but will encompass a greater angle.



For let the two internal straight-lines  $BD$  and  $DC$  have been constructed on one of the sides  $BC$  of the triangle  $ABC$ , from its ends  $B$  and  $C$  (respectively). I say that  $BD$  and  $DC$  are less than the (sum of the) two remaining sides of the triangle  $BA$  and  $AC$ , but encompass an angle  $BDC$  greater than  $BAC$ .

For let  $BD$  have been drawn through to  $E$ . And since for every triangle (the sum of any) two sides is greater than the remaining (side) [Prop. 1.20], for triangle  $ABE$  the (sum of the) two sides  $AB$  and  $AE$  is thus greater than  $BE$ . Let  $EC$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $BA$  and  $AC$  is greater than (the sum of)  $BE$  and  $EC$ . Again, since in triangle  $CED$  the (sum of the) two sides  $CE$  and  $ED$  is greater than  $CD$ , let  $DB$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $CE$  and  $EB$  is greater than (the sum of)  $CD$  and  $DB$ . But, (the sum of)  $BA$  and  $AC$  was shown (to be) greater than (the sum of)  $BE$  and  $EC$ . Thus, (the sum of)  $BA$  and  $AC$  is much greater than (the sum of)  $BD$  and  $DC$ .

Again, since for every triangle the external angle is greater than the internal and opposite (angles) [Prop.

μείζων ἐστὶ τῆς ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ.

Ἐὰν ἄρα τριγώνου ἐπὶ μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν ἀπὸ τῶν περάτων δύο εὐθεῖαι ἐντὸς συσταθῶσιν, αἱ συσταθεῖσαι τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν ἐλάττονες μὲν εἰσιν, μείζονα δὲ γωνίαν περιέχουσιν ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

1.16], for triangle  $CDE$  the external angle  $BDC$  is thus greater than  $CED$ . Accordingly, for the same (reason), the external angle  $CEB$  of the triangle  $ABE$  is also greater than  $BAC$ . But,  $BDC$  was shown (to be) greater than  $CEB$ . Thus,  $BDC$  is much greater than  $BAC$ .

Thus, if two internal straight-lines are constructed on one of the sides of a triangle, from its ends, the constructed (straight-lines) are less than the two remaining sides of the triangle, but encompass a greater angle. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

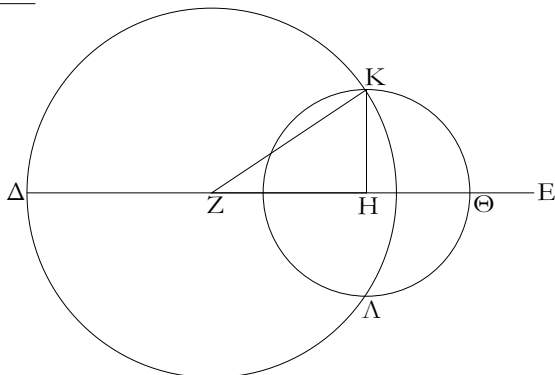
κβ'.

Ἐκ τριῶν εὐθειῶν, αἱ εἰσιν ἴσαι τρισὶ ταῖς δοθείσαις [εὐθείαις], τρίγωνον συστήσασθαι· δεῖ δὲ τὰς δύο τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονας εἶναι πάντη μεταλαμβανομένης [διὰ τὸ καὶ παντὸς τριγώνου τὰς δύο πλευρὰς τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονας εἶναι πάντη μεταλαμβανομένης].

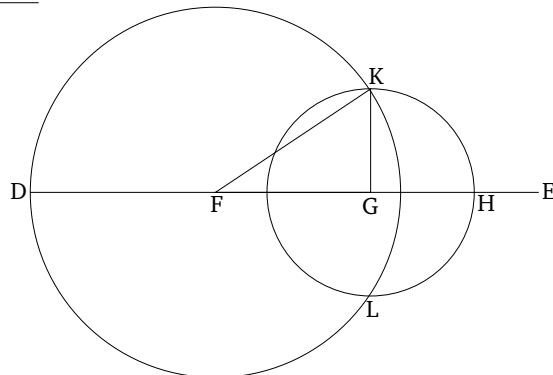
Proposition 22

To construct a triangle from three straight-lines which are equal to three given [straight-lines]. It is necessary for (the sum of) two (of the straight-lines) to be greater than the remaining (one), (the straight-lines) being taken up in any (possible way) [on account of the (fact that) for every triangle (the sum of any) two sides is greater than the remaining (one), (the sides) being taken up in any (possible way) [Prop. 1.20] ].

A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
Γ \_\_\_\_\_



A \_\_\_\_\_  
B \_\_\_\_\_  
C \_\_\_\_\_



Ἐστωσαν αἱ δοθεῖσαι τρεῖς εὐθεῖαι αἱ Α, Β, Γ, ὧν αἱ δύο τῆς λοιπῆς μείζονες ἔστωσαν πάντη μεταλαμβανόμεναι, αἱ μὲν Α, Β τῆς Γ, αἱ δὲ Α, Γ τῆς Β, καὶ ἔτι αἱ Β, Γ τῆς Α· δεῖ δὴ ἐκ τῶν ἴσων ταῖς Α, Β, Γ τρίγωνον συστήσασθαι.

Let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  be the three given straight-lines, of which let (the sum of any) two be greater than the remaining (one), (the straight-lines) being taken up in (any possible way). (Thus), (the sum of)  $A$  and  $B$  (is greater) than  $C$ , (the sum of)  $A$  and  $C$  than  $B$ , and also (the sum of)  $B$  and  $C$  than  $A$ . So it is required to construct a triangle from (straight-lines) equal to  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ .

Ἐκκείσθω τις εὐθεῖα ἡ ΔΕ πεπερασμένη μὲν κατὰ τὸ Δ ἄπειρος δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ε, καὶ κείσθω τῇ μὲν Α ἴση ἢ ΔΖ, τῇ δὲ Β ἴση ἢ ΖΗ, τῇ δὲ Γ ἴση ἢ ΗΘ· καὶ κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ Ζ, διαστήματι δὲ τῷ ΖΔ κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ ΔΚΛ· πάλιν κέντρῳ μὲν τῷ Η, διαστήματι δὲ τῷ ΗΘ κύκλος γεγράφθω ὁ ΚΛΘ, καὶ ἐπεζύχθωσαν αἱ ΚΖ, ΚΗ· λέγω, ὅτι ἐκ τριῶν εὐθειῶν τῶν ἴσων ταῖς Α, Β, Γ τρίγωνον συνέσταται τὸ ΚΖΗ.

Let some straight-line  $DE$  be set out, terminated at  $D$ , and infinite in the direction of  $E$ . And let  $DF$  made equal to  $A$  [Prop. 1.3], and  $FG$  equal to  $B$  [Prop. 1.3], and  $GH$  equal to  $C$  [Prop. 1.3]. And let the circle  $DKL$  have been drawn with center  $F$  and radius  $FD$ . Again, let the circle  $KLH$  have been drawn with center  $G$  and radius  $GH$ . And let  $KF$  and  $KG$  have been joined. I say that the triangle  $KFG$  has been constructed from three straight-lines equal to  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ .

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ τὸ Ζ σημεῖον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ ΔΚΛ κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ ΖΔ τῇ ΖΚ· ἀλλὰ ἢ ΖΔ τῇ Α ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἢ ΚΖ ἄρα τῇ Α ἐστὶν ἴση. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ τὸ Η

σημείον κέντρον ἐστὶ τοῦ  $\Lambda\text{K}\Theta$  κύκλου, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $\text{H}\Theta$  τῇ  $\text{HK}$ : ἀλλὰ ἡ  $\text{H}\Theta$  τῇ  $\Gamma$  ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ ἡ  $\text{KH}$  ἄρα τῇ  $\Gamma$  ἐστὶν ἴση. ἐστὶ δὲ καὶ ἡ  $\text{ZH}$  τῇ  $\text{B}$  ἴση· αἱ τρεῖς ἄρα εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $\text{KZ}$ ,  $\text{ZH}$ ,  $\text{HK}$  τρισὶ ταῖς  $\text{A}$ ,  $\text{B}$ ,  $\Gamma$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν.

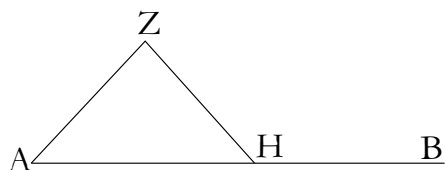
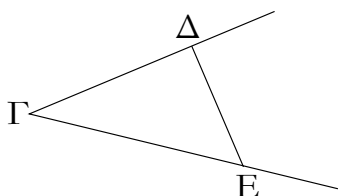
Ἐκ τριῶν ἄρα εὐθειῶν τῶν  $\text{KZ}$ ,  $\text{ZH}$ ,  $\text{HK}$ , αἱ εἰσὶν ἴσαι τρισὶ ταῖς δοθείσαις εὐθείαις ταῖς  $\text{A}$ ,  $\text{B}$ ,  $\Gamma$ , τρίγωνον συνέσταται τὸ  $\text{KZH}$ : ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

For since point  $F$  is the center of the circle  $\text{DKL}$ ,  $\text{FD}$  is equal to  $\text{FK}$ . But,  $\text{FD}$  is equal to  $\text{A}$ . Thus,  $\text{KF}$  is also equal to  $\text{A}$ . Again, since point  $G$  is the center of the circle  $\text{LKH}$ ,  $\text{GH}$  is equal to  $\text{GK}$ . But,  $\text{GH}$  is equal to  $\text{C}$ . Thus,  $\text{KG}$  is also equal to  $\text{C}$ . And  $\text{FG}$  is equal to  $\text{B}$ . Thus, the three straight-lines  $\text{KF}$ ,  $\text{FG}$ , and  $\text{GK}$  are equal to  $\text{A}$ ,  $\text{B}$ , and  $\text{C}$  (respectively).

Thus, the triangle  $\text{KFG}$  has been constructed from the three straight-lines  $\text{KF}$ ,  $\text{FG}$ , and  $\text{GK}$ , which are equal to the three given straight-lines  $\text{A}$ ,  $\text{B}$ , and  $\text{C}$  (respectively). (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

κγ'.

Πρὸς τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθυγράμμω ἴσην γωνίαν εὐθύγραμμον συστήσασθαι.



Ἐστω ἡ μὲν δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἡ  $\text{AB}$ , τὸ δὲ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείον τὸ  $\text{A}$ , ἡ δὲ δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta\text{ΓE}$ : δεῖ δὴ πρὸς τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ τῇ  $\text{AB}$  καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $\text{A}$  τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθύγράμμω τῇ ὑπὸ  $\Delta\text{ΓE}$  ἴσην γωνίαν εὐθύγραμμον συστήσασθαι.

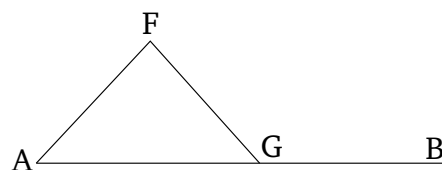
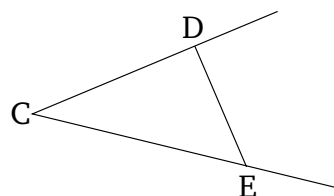
Εἰλήφθω ἐφ' ἑκατέρας τῶν  $\Gamma\Delta$ ,  $\Gamma\text{E}$  τυχόντα σημεῖα τὰ  $\Delta$ ,  $\text{E}$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $\Delta\text{E}$ : καὶ ἐκ τριῶν εὐθειῶν, αἱ εἰσὶν ἴσαι τρισὶ ταῖς  $\Gamma\Delta$ ,  $\Delta\text{E}$ ,  $\Gamma\text{E}$ , τρίγωνον συνεστάτω τὸ  $\text{AZH}$ , ὥστε ἴσην εἶναι τὴν μὲν  $\Gamma\Delta$  τῇ  $\text{AZ}$ , τὴν δὲ  $\Gamma\text{E}$  τῇ  $\text{AH}$ , καὶ ἔτι τὴν  $\Delta\text{E}$  τῇ  $\text{ZH}$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν δύο αἱ  $\Delta\Gamma$ ,  $\Gamma\text{E}$  δύο ταῖς  $\text{ZA}$ ,  $\text{AH}$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρα ἑκατέρᾳ, καὶ βᾶσις ἡ  $\Delta\text{E}$  βᾶσει τῇ  $\text{ZH}$  ἴση, γωνία ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta\text{ΓE}$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $\text{ZAH}$  ἐστὶν ἴση.

Πρὸς ἄρα τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ τῇ  $\text{AB}$  καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $\text{A}$  τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθύγράμμω τῇ ὑπὸ  $\Delta\text{ΓE}$  ἴση γωνία εὐθύγραμμος συνέσταται ἡ ὑπὸ  $\text{ZAH}$ : ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

### Proposition 23

To construct a rectilinear angle equal to a given rectilinear angle at a (given) point on a given straight-line.



Let  $\text{AB}$  be the given straight-line,  $\text{A}$  the (given) point on it, and  $\text{DCE}$  the given rectilinear angle. So it is required to construct a rectilinear angle equal to the given rectilinear angle  $\text{DCE}$  at the (given) point  $\text{A}$  on the given straight-line  $\text{AB}$ .

Let the points  $\text{D}$  and  $\text{E}$  have been taken somewhere on each of the (straight-lines)  $\text{CD}$  and  $\text{CE}$  (respectively), and let  $\text{DE}$  have been joined. And let the triangle  $\text{AFG}$  have been constructed from three straight-lines which are equal to  $\text{CD}$ ,  $\text{DE}$ , and  $\text{CE}$ , such that  $\text{CD}$  is equal to  $\text{AF}$ ,  $\text{CE}$  to  $\text{AG}$ , and also  $\text{DE}$  to  $\text{FG}$  [Prop. 1.22].

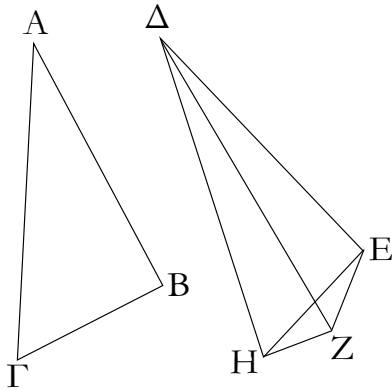
Therefore, since the two (straight-lines)  $\text{DC}$ ,  $\text{CE}$  are equal to the two straight-lines  $\text{FA}$ ,  $\text{AG}$ , respectively, and the base  $\text{DE}$  is equal to the base  $\text{FG}$ , the angle  $\text{DCE}$  is thus equal to the angle  $\text{FAG}$  [Prop. 1.8].

Thus, the rectilinear angle  $\text{FAG}$ , equal to the given rectilinear angle  $\text{DCE}$ , has been constructed at the (given) point  $\text{A}$  on the given straight-line  $\text{AB}$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.



κδ'.

Ἐάν δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευρὰς [ταῖς] δύο πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν δὲ γωνίαν τῆς γωνίας μείζονα ἔχη τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην, καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῆς βάσεως μείζονα ἔξει.



Ἐστω δύο τρίγωνα τὰ  $AB\Gamma$ ,  $\Delta EZ$  τὰς δύο πλευρὰς τὰς  $AB$ ,  $A\Gamma$  ταῖς δύο πλευραῖς ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $\Delta Z$  ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν μὲν  $AB$  τῇ  $\Delta E$  τὴν δὲ  $A\Gamma$  τῇ  $\Delta Z$ , ἡ δὲ πρὸς τῷ  $A$  γωνία τῆς πρὸς τῷ  $\Delta$  γωνίας μείζων ἔστω λέγω, ὅτι καὶ βάσις ἡ  $B\Gamma$  βάσεως τῆς  $EZ$  μείζων ἔστί.

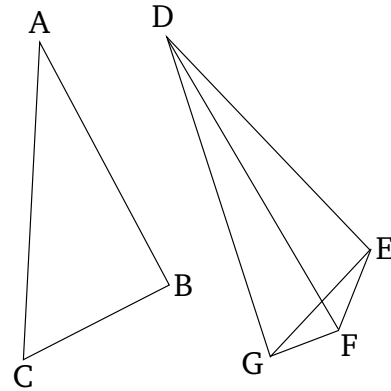
Ἐπεὶ γὰρ μείζων ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  γωνίας, συνεστάτω πρὸς τῇ  $\Delta E$  εὐθείᾳ καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $\Delta$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία ἴση ἢ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta H$ , καὶ κείσθω ὁποτέρω τῶν  $A\Gamma$ ,  $\Delta Z$  ἴση ἢ  $\Delta H$ , καὶ ἐπεζύχθωσαν αἱ  $EH$ ,  $ZH$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἔστί ἡ μὲν  $AB$  τῇ  $\Delta E$ , ἡ δὲ  $A\Gamma$  τῇ  $\Delta H$ , δύο δὲ αἱ  $BA$ ,  $A\Gamma$  δυοῖς ταῖς  $E\Delta$ ,  $\Delta H$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta H$  ἴση· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $B\Gamma$  βάσει τῇ  $EH$  ἔστιν ἴση. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ ἴση ἔστί ἡ  $\Delta Z$  τῇ  $\Delta H$ , ἴση ἔστί καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta HZ$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $\Delta ZH$ · μείζων ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta ZH$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $EZH$ · πολλῶ ἄρα μείζων ἔστί ἡ ὑπὸ  $EZH$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $EHZ$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ τρίγωνόν ἐστί τὸ  $EZH$  μείζονα ἔχον τὴν ὑπὸ  $EZH$  γωνίαν τῆς ὑπὸ  $EHZ$ , ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν μείζονα γωνίαν ἡ μείζων πλευρὰ ὑποτείνει, μείζων ἄρα καὶ πλευρὰ ἡ  $EH$  τῆς  $EZ$ . ἴση δὲ ἡ  $EH$  τῇ  $B\Gamma$ · μείζων ἄρα καὶ ἡ  $B\Gamma$  τῆς  $EZ$ .

Ἐάν ἄρα δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευρὰς δυοῖς πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν δὲ γωνίαν τῆς γωνίας μείζονα ἔχη τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην, καὶ τὴν βάσιν τῆς βάσεως μείζονα ἔξει· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

## Proposition 24

If two triangles have two sides equal to two sides, respectively, but (one) has the angle encompassed by the equal straight-lines greater than the (corresponding) angle (in the other), then (the former triangle) will also have a base greater than the base (of the latter).



Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles having the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  equal to the two sides  $DE$  and  $DF$ , respectively. (That is),  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . Let them also have the angle at  $A$  greater than the angle at  $D$ . I say that the base  $BC$  is greater than the base  $EF$ .

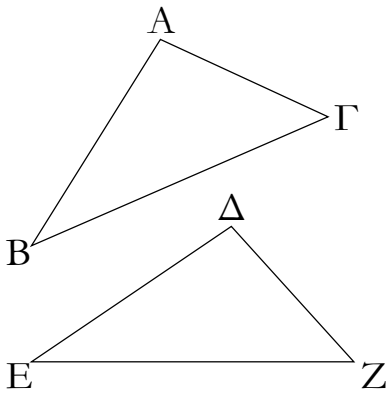
For since angle  $BAC$  is greater than angle  $EDF$ , let (angle)  $EDG$ , equal to angle  $BAC$ , have been constructed at point  $D$  on the straight-line  $DE$  [Prop. 1.23]. And let  $DG$  be made equal to either of  $AC$  or  $DF$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $EG$  and  $FG$  have been joined.

Therefore, since  $AB$  is equal to  $DE$  and  $AC$  to  $DG$ , the two (straight-lines)  $BA$ ,  $AC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $ED$ ,  $DG$ , respectively. Also the angle  $BAC$  is equal to the angle  $EDG$ . Thus, the base  $BC$  is equal to the base  $EG$  [Prop. 1.4]. Again, since  $DF$  is equal to  $DG$ , angle  $DGF$  is also equal to angle  $DFG$  [Prop. 1.5]. Thus,  $DFG$  (is) greater than  $EGF$ . Thus,  $EFG$  is much greater than  $EGF$ . And since triangle  $EFG$  has angle  $EFG$  greater than  $EGF$ , and the greater angle subtends the greater side [Prop. 1.19], side  $EG$  (is) thus also greater than  $EF$ . But  $EG$  (is) equal to  $BC$ . Thus,  $BC$  (is) also greater than  $EF$ .

Thus, if two triangles have two sides equal to two sides, respectively, but (one) has the angle encompassed by the equal straight-lines greater than the (corresponding) angle (in the other), then (the former triangle) will also have a base greater than the base (of the latter). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

κε'.

Ἐάν δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευράς δυοῖ πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν δὲ βασίιν τῆς βάσεως μείζονα ἔχη, καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῆς γωνίας μείζονα ἔξει τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην.



Ἐστω δύο τρίγωνα τὰ  $ABG$ ,  $\Delta EZ$  τὰς δύο πλευράς τὰς  $AB$ ,  $AG$  ταῖς δύο πλευραῖς ταῖς  $DE$ ,  $DZ$  ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν μὲν  $AB$  τῇ  $DE$ , τὴν δὲ  $AG$  τῇ  $DZ$ . βάσις δὲ ἡ  $BG$  βάσεως τῆς  $EZ$  μείζων ἔστω· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνίας τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  μείζων ἔστίιν.

Εἰ γὰρ μή, ἦτοι ἴση ἔστίιν αὐτῇ ἢ ἐλάσσων· ἴση μὲν οὖν οὐκ ἔστίιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ . ἴση γὰρ ἂν ἦν καὶ βάσις ἡ  $BG$  βάσει τῇ  $EZ$ . οὐκ ἔστίι δέ. οὐκ ἄρα ἴση ἔστίι γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ . οὐδὲ μὴν ἐλάσσων ἔστίιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ . ἐλάσσων γὰρ ἂν ἦν καὶ βάσις ἡ  $BG$  βάσεως τῆς  $EZ$ . οὐκ ἔστίι δέ. οὐκ ἄρα ἐλάσσων ἔστίιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ . ἐδείχθη δέ, ὅτι οὐδὲ ἴση· μείζων ἄρα ἔστίιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ .

Ἐάν ἄρα δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο πλευράς δυοῖ πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν δὲ βασίιν τῆς βάσεως μείζονα ἔχη, καὶ τὴν γωνίαν τῆς γωνίας μείζονα ἔξει τὴν ὑπὸ τῶν ἴσων εὐθειῶν περιεχομένην· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

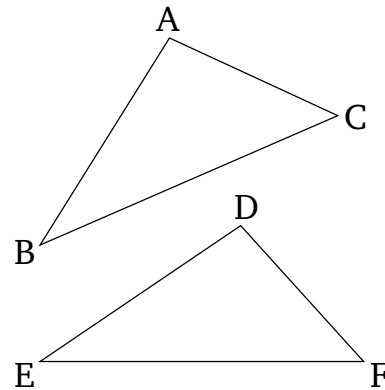
κς'.

Ἐάν δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο γωνίας δυοῖ γωνίαις ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω καὶ μίαν πλευράν μιᾷ πλευρᾷ ἴσην ἦτοι τὴν πρὸς ταῖς ἴσαις γωνίαις ἢ τὴν ὑποτείνουσαν ὑπὸ μίαν τῶν ἴσων γωνιῶν, καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς πλευράς ταῖς λοιπαῖς πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔξει [ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω] καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν γωνίαν τῇ λοιπῇ γωνία.

Ἐστω δύο τρίγωνα τὰ  $ABG$ ,  $\Delta EZ$  τὰς δύο γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ  $ABG$ ,  $BGA$  δυοῖ ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\Delta EZ$ ,  $EZ\Delta$  ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρω, τὴν μὲν ὑπὸ  $ABG$  τῇ ὑπὸ

## Proposition 25

If two triangles have two sides equal to two sides, respectively, but (one) has a base greater than the base (of the other), then (the former triangle) will also have the angle encompassed by the equal straight-lines greater than the (corresponding) angle (in the latter).



Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles having the two sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  equal to the two sides  $DE$  and  $DF$ , respectively (That is),  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . And let the base  $BC$  be greater than the base  $EF$ . I say that angle  $BAC$  is also greater than  $EDF$ .

For if not,  $(BAC)$  is certainly either equal to, or less than,  $(EDF)$ . In fact,  $BAC$  is not equal to  $EDF$ . For then the base  $BC$  would also have been equal to  $EF$  [Prop. 1.4]. But it is not. Thus, angle  $BAC$  is not equal to  $EDF$ . Neither, indeed, is  $BAC$  less than  $EDF$ . For then the base  $BC$  would also have been less than  $EF$  [Prop. 1.24]. But it is not. Thus, angle  $BAC$  is not less than  $EDF$ . But it was shown that  $(BAC)$  is also not equal (to  $EDF$ ). Thus,  $BAC$  is greater than  $EDF$ .

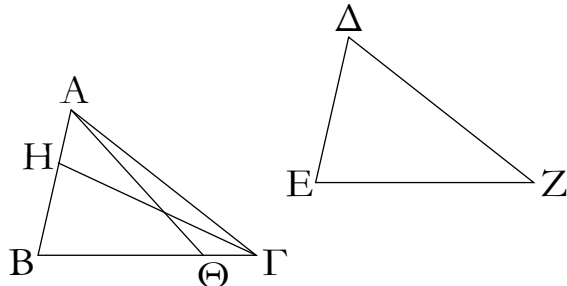
Thus, if two triangles have two sides equal to two sides, respectively, but (one) has a base greater than the base (of the other), then (the former triangle) will also have the angle encompassed by the equal straight-lines greater than the (corresponding) angle (in the latter). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

## Proposition 26

If two triangles have two angles equal to two angles, respectively, and one side equal to one side—in fact, either that by the equal angles, or that subtending one of the equal angles—then (the triangles) will also have the remaining sides equal to the [corresponding] remaining sides, and the remaining angle (equal) to the remaining angle.

Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles having the two angles  $ABC$  and  $BCA$  equal to the two (angles)  $DEF$

$\Delta EZ$ , τὴν δὲ ὑπὸ  $BGA$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $EZ\Delta$ : ἐχέτω δὲ καὶ μίαν πλευρὰν μιᾶς πλευρᾶς ἴσην, πρότερον τὴν πρὸς ταῖς ἴσαις γωνίαις τὴν  $BG$  τῆς  $EZ$ : λέγω, ὅτι καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς πλευρὰς ταῖς λοιπαῖς πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔξει ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν, τὴν μὲν  $AB$  τῆς  $\Delta E$  τὴν δὲ  $AG$  τῆς  $\Delta Z$ , καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν γωνίαν τῆς λοιπῆς γωνίας, τὴν ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$ .



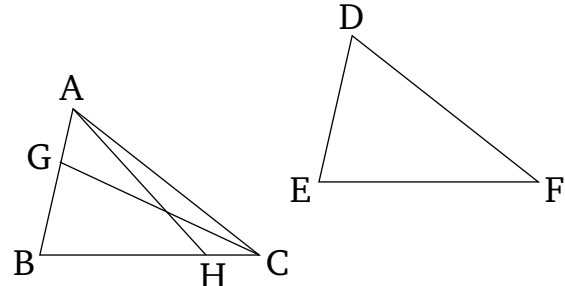
Εἰ γὰρ ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ  $AB$  τῆς  $\Delta E$ , μία αὐτῶν μείζων ἐστίν. ἔστω μείζων ἡ  $AB$ , καὶ κείσθω τῆς  $\Delta E$  ἴση ἡ  $BH$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $H\Gamma$ .

Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν  $BH$  τῆς  $\Delta E$ , ἡ δὲ  $BG$  τῆς  $EZ$ , δύο δὲ αἱ  $BH$ ,  $BG$  δυοὶ ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $EZ$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $HBG$  γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ  $\Delta EZ$  ἴση ἐστίν· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $H\Gamma$  βάσει τῆς  $\Delta Z$  ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ  $HBG$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $\Delta EZ$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσσονται, ὅφ' ἄς αἱ ἴσας πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν ἴση ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $H\Gamma B$  γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ  $\Delta ZE$ . ἀλλὰ ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta ZE$  τῆς ὑπὸ  $BGA$  ὑπόκειται ἴση καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $BGH$  ἄρα τῆς ὑπὸ  $BGA$  ἴση ἐστίν, ἡ ἐλάσσων τῆς μείζονος ὅπερ ἀδύνατον. οὐκ ἄρα ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ  $AB$  τῆς  $\Delta E$ . ἴση ἄρα. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἡ  $BG$  τῆς  $EZ$  ἴση· δύο δὲ αἱ  $AB$ ,  $BG$  δυοὶ ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $EZ$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $ABG$  γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ  $\Delta EZ$  ἐστὶν ἴση· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $AG$  βάσει τῆς  $\Delta Z$  ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ λοιπὴ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῆς λοιπῆς γωνίας τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  ἴση ἐστίν.

Ἄλλὰ δὴ πάλιν ἔστωσαν αἱ ὑπὸ τὰς ἴσας γωνίας πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσαι ἴσαι, ὡς ἡ  $AB$  τῆς  $\Delta E$ : λέγω πάλιν, ὅτι καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ πλευραὶ ταῖς λοιπαῖς πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔσσονται, ἡ μὲν  $AG$  τῆς  $\Delta Z$ , ἡ δὲ  $BG$  τῆς  $EZ$  καὶ ἔτι ἡ λοιπὴ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $BAG$  τῆς λοιπῆς γωνίας τῆς ὑπὸ  $E\Delta Z$  ἴση ἐστίν.

Εἰ γὰρ ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ  $BG$  τῆς  $EZ$ , μία αὐτῶν μείζων ἐστίν. ἔστω μείζων, εἰ δυνατόν, ἡ  $BG$ , καὶ κείσθω τῆς  $EZ$  ἴση ἡ  $B\Theta$ , καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ  $A\Theta$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν  $B\Theta$  τῆς  $EZ$  ἡ δὲ  $AB$  τῆς  $\Delta E$ , δύο δὲ αἱ  $AB$ ,  $B\Theta$  δυοὶ ταῖς  $\Delta E$ ,  $EZ$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρωθεν ἑκατέρωθεν καὶ γωνίας ἴσας περιέχουσιν· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $A\Theta$  βάσει τῆς  $\Delta Z$  ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ  $AB\Theta$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $\Delta EZ$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσσονται, ὅφ' ἄς αἱ ἴσας πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν ἴση ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ  $B\Theta A$

and  $EFD$ , respectively. (That is)  $ABC$  to  $DEF$ , and  $BCA$  to  $EFD$ . And let them also have one side equal to one side. First of all, the (side) by the equal angles. (That is)  $BC$  (equal) to  $EF$ . I say that the remaining sides will be equal to the corresponding remaining sides. (That is)  $AB$  to  $DE$ , and  $AC$  to  $DF$ . And the remaining angle (will be equal) to the remaining angle. (That is)  $BAC$  to  $EDF$ .



For if  $AB$  is unequal to  $DE$  then one of them is greater. Let  $AB$  be greater, and let  $BG$  be made equal to  $DE$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $GC$  have been joined.

Therefore, since  $BG$  is equal to  $DE$ , and  $BC$  to  $EF$ , the two (straight-lines)  $GB$ ,  $BC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DE$ ,  $EF$ , respectively. And angle  $GBC$  is equal to angle  $DEF$ . Thus, the base  $GC$  is equal to the base  $DF$ , and triangle  $GBC$  is equal to triangle  $DEF$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the (corresponding) remaining angles [Prop. 1.4]. Thus,  $GCB$  (is equal) to  $DFE$ . But,  $DFE$  was assumed (to be) equal to  $BCA$ . Thus,  $BCG$  is also equal to  $BCA$ , the lesser to the greater. The very thing (is) impossible. Thus,  $AB$  is not unequal to  $DE$ . Thus, (it is) equal. And  $BC$  is also equal to  $EF$ . So the two (straight-lines)  $AB$ ,  $BC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DE$ ,  $EF$ , respectively. And angle  $ABC$  is equal to angle  $DEF$ . Thus, the base  $AC$  is equal to the base  $DF$ , and the remaining angle  $BAC$  is equal to the remaining angle  $EDF$  [Prop. 1.4].

But, again, let the sides subtending the equal angles be equal: for instance, (let)  $AB$  (be equal) to  $DE$ . Again, I say that the remaining sides will be equal to the remaining sides. (That is)  $AC$  to  $DF$ , and  $BC$  to  $EF$ . Furthermore, the remaining angle  $BAC$  is equal to the remaining angle  $EDF$ .

For if  $BC$  is unequal to  $EF$  then one of them is greater. If possible, let  $BC$  be greater. And let  $BH$  be made equal to  $EF$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $AH$  have been joined. And since  $BH$  is equal to  $EF$ , and  $AB$  to  $DE$ , the two (straight-lines)  $AB$ ,  $BH$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DE$ ,  $EF$ , respectively. And the angles they encompass (are also equal). Thus, the base  $AH$  is

γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ EZΔ. ἀλλὰ ἡ ὑπὸ EZΔ τῆ ὑπὸ BΓA ἔστιν ἴση· τριγώνου δὴ τοῦ AΘΓ ἢ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ BΘA ἴση ἔστι τῆ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῆ ὑπὸ BΓA· ὅπερ ἀδύνατον. οὐκ ἄρα ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ BΓ τῆ EZ· ἴση ἄρα. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἡ AB τῆ ΔE ἴση. δύο δὲ αἰ AB, BΓ δύο ταῖς ΔE, EZ ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ γωνίας ἴσας περιέχουσι· βάσις ἄρα ἡ AΓ βάσει τῆ ΔZ ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ ABΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΔEZ τριγώνῳ ἴσον καὶ λοιπὴ γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ BAΓ τῆ λοιπῆ γωνία τῆ ὑπὸ EDZ ἴση.

Ἐάν ἄρα δύο τρίγωνα τὰς δύο γωνίας δυσὶ γωνίαις ἴσας ἔχη ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω καὶ μίαν πλευρὰν μιᾶ πλευρᾶ ἴσην ἤτοι τὴν πρὸς ταῖς ἴσαις γωνίαις, ἢ τὴν ὑποτείνουσαν ὑπὸ μίαν τῶν ἴσων γωνιῶν, καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς πλευρὰς ταῖς λοιπαῖς πλευραῖς ἴσας ἔξει καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν γωνίαν τῆ λοιπῆ γωνία· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

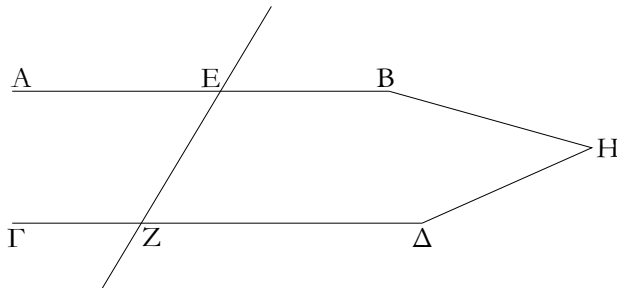
equal to the base  $DF$ , and the triangle  $ABH$  is equal to the triangle  $DEF$ , and the remaining angles subtended by the equal sides will be equal to the (corresponding) remaining angles [Prop. 1.4]. Thus, angle  $BHA$  is equal to  $EFD$ . But,  $EFD$  is equal to  $BCA$ . So, for triangle  $AHC$ , the external angle  $BHA$  is equal to the internal and opposite angle  $BCA$ . The very thing (is) impossible [Prop. 1.16]. Thus,  $BC$  is not unequal to  $EF$ . Thus, (it is) equal. And  $AB$  is also equal to  $DE$ . So the two (straight-lines)  $AB, BC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DE, EF$ , respectively. And they encompass equal angles. Thus, the base  $AC$  is equal to the base  $DF$ , and triangle  $ABC$  (is) equal to triangle  $DEF$ , and the remaining angle  $BAC$  (is) equal to the remaining angle  $EDF$  [Prop. 1.4].

Thus, if two triangles have two angles equal to two angles, respectively, and one side equal to one side—in fact, either that by the equal angles, or that subtending one of the equal angles—then (the triangles) will also have the remaining sides equal to the (corresponding) remaining sides, and the remaining angle (equal) to the remaining angle. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

† The Greek text has “ $BG, BC$ ”, which is obviously a mistake.

κζ'.

Ἐάν εἰς δύο εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιῆ, παράλληλοι ἔσονται ἀλλήλαις αἱ εὐθεῖαι.

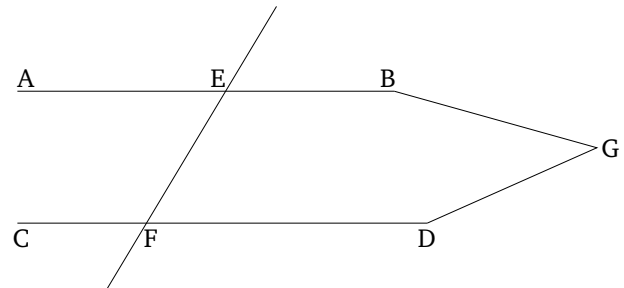


Εἰς γὰρ δύο εὐθείας τὰς AB, ΓΔ εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα ἡ EZ τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ AEF, EZΔ ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιείτω λέγω, ὅτι παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ AB τῆ ΓΔ.

Εἰ γὰρ μή, ἐκβαλλόμεναι αἱ AB, ΓΔ συμπεσοῦνται ἤτοι ἐπὶ τὰ B, Δ μέρη ἢ ἐπὶ τὰ A, Γ. ἐκβεβλήσθωσαν καὶ συμπίπτωσαν ἐπὶ τὰ B, Δ μέρη κατὰ τὸ H. τριγώνου δὴ τοῦ HEZ ἢ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἢ ὑπὸ AEF ἴση ἔστι τῆ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῆ ὑπὸ EZH· ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύνατον· οὐκ ἄρα αἱ AB, ΓΔ ἐκβαλλόμεναι συμπεσοῦνται ἐπὶ τὰ B, Δ μέρη. ὁμοίως δὲ δειχθήσεται, ὅτι οὐδὲ ἐπὶ τὰ A,

Proposition 27

If a straight-line falling across two straight-lines makes the alternate angles equal to one another then the (two) straight-lines will be parallel to one another.



For let the straight-line  $EF$ , falling across the two straight-lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , make the alternate angles  $AEF$  and  $EFD$  equal to one another. I say that  $AB$  and  $CD$  are parallel.

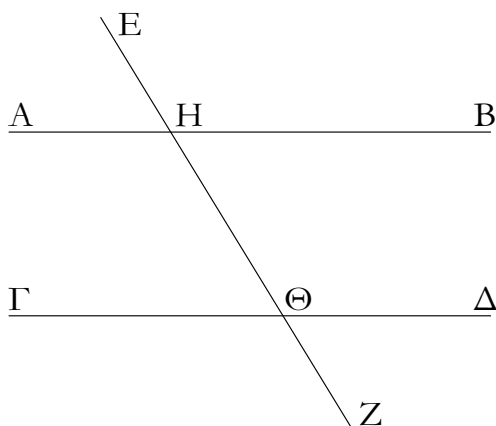
For if not, being produced,  $AB$  and  $CD$  will certainly meet together: either in the direction of  $B$  and  $D$ , or (in the direction) of  $A$  and  $C$  [Def. 1.23]. Let them have been produced, and let them meet together in the direction of  $B$  and  $D$  at (point)  $G$ . So, for the triangle  $GEF$ , the external angle  $AEF$  is equal to the interior and opposite (angle)  $EFG$ . The very thing is impossible

Γ· αὶ δὲ ἐπὶ μηδέτερα τὰ μέρη συμπίπτουσαι παράλληλοι εἰσιν· παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $AB$  τῇ  $\Gamma\Delta$ .

Ἐάν ἄρα εἰς δύο εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιῇ, παράλληλοι ἔσσονται αὐὶ εὐθεῖαι· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

κη'.

Ἐάν εἰς δύο εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὴν ἐκτὸς γωνίαν τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη ἴσην ποιῇ ἢ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας, παράλληλοι ἔσσονται ἀλλήλαις αὐὶ εὐθεῖαι.



Εἰς γὰρ δύο εὐθείας τὰς  $AB$ ,  $\Gamma\Delta$  εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα ἡ  $EZ$  τὴν ἐκτὸς γωνίαν τὴν ὑπὸ  $EHB$  τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον γωνίᾳ τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἴσην ποιείτω ἢ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰς ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας· λέγω, ὅτι παράλληλος ἐστὶν ἡ  $AB$  τῇ  $\Gamma\Delta$ .

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ  $EHB$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$ , ἀλλὰ ἡ ὑπὸ  $EHB$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  ἄρα τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ εἰσιν ἐναλλάξ· παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $AB$  τῇ  $\Gamma\Delta$ .

Πάλιν, ἐπεὶ αὐὶ ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ αὐὶ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ ,  $BH\Theta$  δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι, αὐὶ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ ,  $BH\Theta$  ταῖς ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἴσαι εἰσίν· κοινὴ ἀφηρήσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ · λοιπὴ ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  λοιπῇ τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ εἰσιν ἐναλλάξ· παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $AB$  τῇ  $\Gamma\Delta$ .

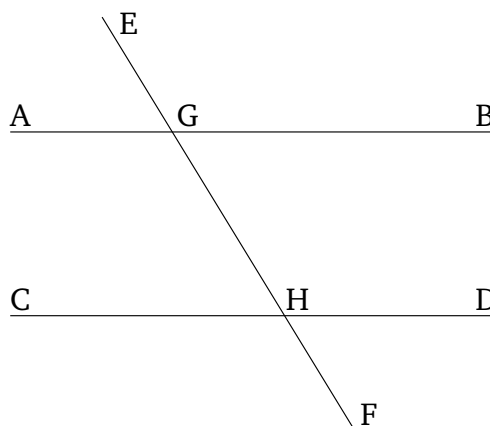
Ἐάν ἄρα εἰς δύο εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὴν ἐκτὸς γωνίαν τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη ἴσην ποιῇ ἢ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας, παράλληλοι ἔσσονται αὐὶ εὐθεῖαι· ὅπερ ἔδει

[Prop. 1.16]. Thus, being produced,  $AB$  and  $DC$  will not meet together in the direction of  $B$  and  $D$ . Similarly, it can be shown that neither (will they meet together) in (the direction of)  $A$  and  $C$ . But (straight-lines) meeting in neither direction are parallel [Def. 1.23]. Thus,  $AB$  and  $CD$  are parallel.

Thus, if a straight-line falling across two straight-lines makes the alternate angles equal to one another then the (two) straight-lines will be parallel (to one another). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

### Proposition 28

If a straight-line falling across two straight-lines makes the external angle equal to the internal and opposite angle on the same side, or (makes) the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side equal to two right-angles, then the (two) straight-lines will be parallel to one another.



For let  $EF$ , falling across the two straight-lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , make the external angle  $EGB$  equal to the internal and opposite angle  $GHD$ , or the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side,  $BGH$  and  $GHD$ , equal to two right-angles. I say that  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ .

For since (in the first case)  $EGB$  is equal to  $GHD$ , but  $EGB$  is equal to  $AGH$  [Prop. 1.15],  $AGH$  is thus also equal to  $GHD$ . And they are alternate (angles). Thus,  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  [Prop. 1.27].

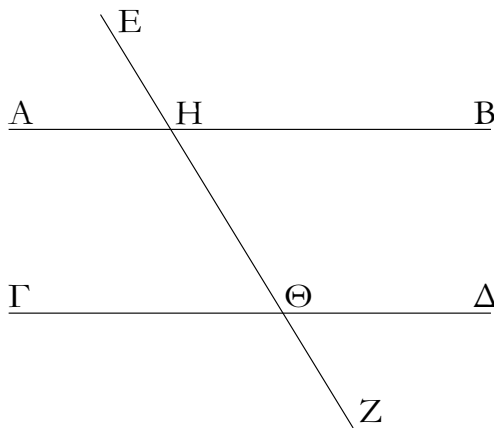
Again, since (in the second case, the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$  is equal to two right-angles, and (the sum of)  $AGH$  and  $BGH$  is also equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13], (the sum of)  $AGH$  and  $BGH$  is thus equal to (the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$ . Let  $BGH$  have been subtracted from both. Thus, the remainder  $AGH$  is equal to the remainder  $GHD$ . And they are alternate (angles). Thus,  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  [Prop. 1.27].

Thus, if a straight-line falling across two straight-lines makes the external angle equal to the internal and oppo-

δειξαι.

κθ'.

Ἡ εἰς τὰς παραλλήλους εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὰς τε ἐναλλάξ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιεῖ καὶ τὴν ἐκτὸς τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον ἴσην καὶ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας.



Εἰς γὰρ παραλλήλους εὐθείας τὰς  $AB$ ,  $\Gamma\Delta$  εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπττω ἡ  $EZ$ . λέγω, ὅτι τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἴσας ποιεῖ καὶ τὴν ἐκτὸς γωνίαν τὴν ὑπὸ  $EHB$  τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἴσην καὶ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τὰς ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας.

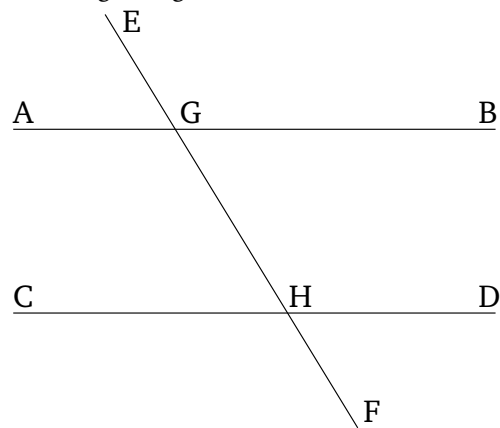
Εἰ γὰρ ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$ , μία αὐτῶν μείζων ἐστίν. ἔστω μείζων ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ . κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ . αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ ,  $BH\Theta$  τῶν ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  μείζονές εἰσιν. ἀλλὰ αἱ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$ ,  $BH\Theta$  δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν. [καὶ] αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσιν. αἱ δὲ ἀπ' ἐλασσόνων ἢ δύο ὀρθῶν ἐμβαλλόμεναι εἰς ἄπειρον συμπέουσιν· αἱ ἄρα  $AB$ ,  $\Gamma\Delta$  ἐμβαλλόμεναι εἰς ἄπειρον συμπεσοῦνται· οὐ συμπέουσιν δὲ διὰ τὸ παραλλήλους αὐτὰς ὑποκείσθαι· οὐκ ἄρα ἄνισός ἐστιν ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$ . ἴση ἄρα. ἀλλὰ ἡ ὑπὸ  $AH\Theta$  τῇ ὑπὸ  $EHB$  ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $EHB$  ἄρα τῇ ὑπὸ  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἐστὶν ἴση· κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ . αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $EHB$ ,  $BH\Theta$  ταῖς ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἴσαι εἰσίν. ἀλλὰ αἱ ὑπὸ  $EHB$ ,  $BH\Theta$  δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $BH\Theta$ ,  $H\Theta\Delta$  ἄρα δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν.

Ἡ ἄρα εἰς τὰς παραλλήλους εὐθείας εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα τὰς τε ἐναλλάξ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις ποιεῖ καὶ τὴν ἐκτὸς

site angle on the same side, or (makes) the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side equal to two right-angles, then the (two) straight-lines will be parallel (to one another). (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 29

A straight-line falling across parallel straight-lines makes the alternate angles equal to one another, the external (angle) equal to the internal and opposite (angle), and the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side equal to two right-angles.



For let the straight-line  $EF$  fall across the parallel straight-lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ . I say that it makes the alternate angles,  $AGH$  and  $GHD$ , equal, the external angle  $EGB$  equal to the internal and opposite (angle)  $GHD$ , and the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side,  $BGH$  and  $GHD$ , equal to two right-angles.

For if  $AGH$  is unequal to  $GHD$  then one of them is greater. Let  $AGH$  be greater. Let  $BGH$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $AGH$  and  $BGH$  is greater than (the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$ . But, (the sum of)  $AGH$  and  $BGH$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop 1.13]. Thus, (the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$  is [also] less than two right-angles. But (straight-lines) being produced to infinity from (internal angles whose sum is) less than two right-angles meet together [Post. 5]. Thus,  $AB$  and  $CD$ , being produced to infinity, will meet together. But they do not meet, on account of them (initially) being assumed parallel (to one another) [Def. 1.23]. Thus,  $AGH$  is not unequal to  $GHD$ . Thus, (it is) equal. But,  $AGH$  is equal to  $EGB$  [Prop. 1.15]. And  $EGB$  is thus also equal to  $GHD$ . Let  $BGH$  be added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $EGB$  and  $BGH$  is equal to (the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$ . But, (the sum of)  $EGB$  and  $BGH$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13]. Thus, (the sum of)  $BGH$  and  $GHD$

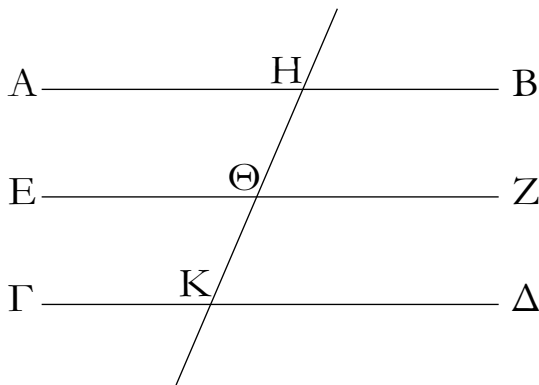
τῆ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον ἴσην καὶ τὰς ἐντὸς καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

is also equal to two right-angles.

Thus, a straight-line falling across parallel straight-lines makes the alternate angles equal to one another, the external (angle) equal to the internal and opposite (angle), and the (sum of the) internal (angles) on the same side equal to two right-angles. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

λ'.

Αἱ τῆ αὐτῆ εὐθείας παράλληλοι καὶ ἀλλήλαις εἰσι παράλληλοι.



Ἐστω ἑκατέρα τῶν AB, ΓΔ τῆ EZ παράλληλος· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ ἡ AB τῆ ΓΔ ἐστὶ παράλληλος.

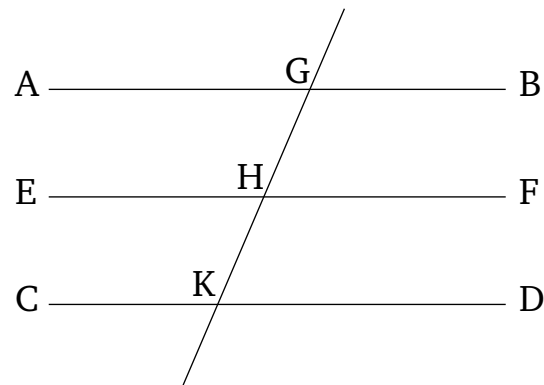
Ἐμπίπττω γὰρ εἰς αὐτὰς εὐθεῖα ἡ HK.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς παραλλήλους εὐθείας τὰς AB, EZ εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτωκεν ἡ HK, ἴση ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ AHK τῆ ὑπὸ HΘZ. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ εἰς παραλλήλους εὐθείας τὰς EZ, ΓΔ εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτωκεν ἡ HK, ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ HΘZ τῆ ὑπὸ HKΔ. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ AHK τῆ ὑπὸ HΘZ ἴση. καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ AHK ἄρα τῆ ὑπὸ HKΔ ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ εἰσὶν ἐναλλάξ. παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ AB τῆ ΓΔ.

[Αἱ ἄρα τῆ αὐτῆ εὐθείας παράλληλοι καὶ ἀλλήλαις εἰσι παράλληλοι·] ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

Proposition 30

(Straight-lines) parallel to the same straight-line are also parallel to one another.



Let each of the (straight-lines)  $AB$  and  $CD$  be parallel to  $EF$ . I say that  $AB$  is also parallel to  $CD$ .

For let the straight-line  $GK$  fall across ( $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$ ).

And since  $GK$  has fallen across the parallel straight-lines  $AB$  and  $EF$ , (angle)  $AGK$  (is) thus equal to  $GHF$  [Prop. 1.29]. Again, since  $GK$  has fallen across the parallel straight-lines  $EF$  and  $CD$ , (angle)  $GHF$  is equal to  $GKD$  [Prop. 1.29]. But  $AGK$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $GHF$ . Thus,  $AGK$  is also equal to  $GKD$ . And they are alternate (angles). Thus,  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$  [Prop. 1.27].

[Thus, (straight-lines) parallel to the same straight-line are also parallel to one another.] (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

λα'.

Διὰ τοῦ δοθέντος σημείου τῆ δοθείσης εὐθείας παράλληλον εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

Ἐστω τὸ μὲν δοθὲν σημεῖον τὸ A, ἡ δὲ δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἡ BΓ· δεῖ δὴ διὰ τοῦ A σημείου τῆ BΓ εὐθείας παράλληλον εὐθεῖαν γραμμὴν ἀγαγεῖν.

Εἰλήφθω ἐπὶ τῆς BΓ τυχὸν σημεῖον τὸ Δ, καὶ ἐπεξέυχθω ἡ AΔ· καὶ συνεστάτω πρὸς τῆ ΔA εὐθεία καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῆ σημείῳ τῷ A τῆ ὑπὸ AΔΓ γωνία ἴση ἡ ὑπὸ ΔAE· καὶ ἐκβεβλήσθω ἐπ' εὐθείας τῆ EA εὐθεῖα

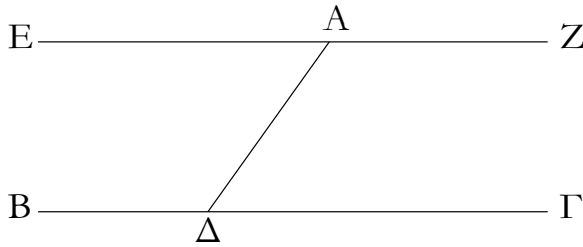
Proposition 31

To draw a straight-line parallel to a given straight-line, through a given point.

Let  $A$  be the given point, and  $BC$  the given straight-line. So it is required to draw a straight-line parallel to the straight-line  $BC$ , through the point  $A$ .

Let the point  $D$  have been taken somewhere on  $BC$ , and let  $AD$  have been joined. And let (angle)  $DAE$ , equal to angle  $ADC$ , have been constructed at the point  $A$  on the straight-line  $DA$  [Prop. 1.23]. And let the

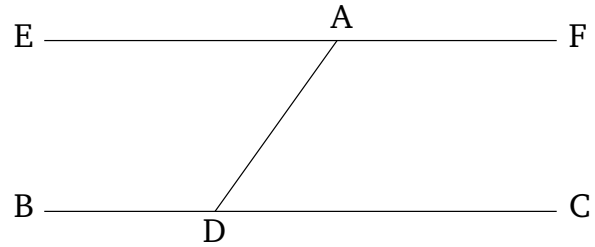
ἡ AZ.



Καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς δύο εὐθείας τὰς ΒΓ, ΕΖ εὐθείᾳ ἐμπίπτουσα ἡ ΑΔ τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ ΕΑΔ, ΑΔΓ ἴσας ἀλλήλαις πεποίηκεν, παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ ΕΑΖ τῇ ΒΓ.

Διὰ τοῦ δοθέντος ἄρα σημείου τοῦ Α τῇ δοθείσῃ εὐθείᾳ τῇ ΒΓ παράλληλος εὐθεῖα γραμμὴ ἦναι τῇ ΕΑΖ· ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

straight-line  $AF$  have been produced in a straight-line with  $EA$ .

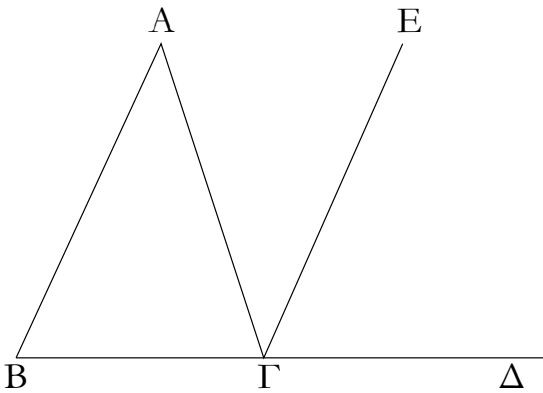


And since the straight-line  $AD$ , (in) falling across the two straight-lines  $BC$  and  $EF$ , has made the alternate angles  $EAD$  and  $ADC$  equal to one another,  $EAF$  is thus parallel to  $BC$  [Prop. 1.27].

Thus, the straight-line  $EAF$  has been drawn parallel to the given straight-line  $BC$ , through the given point  $A$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

λβ'.

Παντὸς τριγώνου μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν προσειβληθείσης ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία δυοῖ ταῖς ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ ἐντὸς τοῦ τριγώνου τρεῖς γωνίαι δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν.



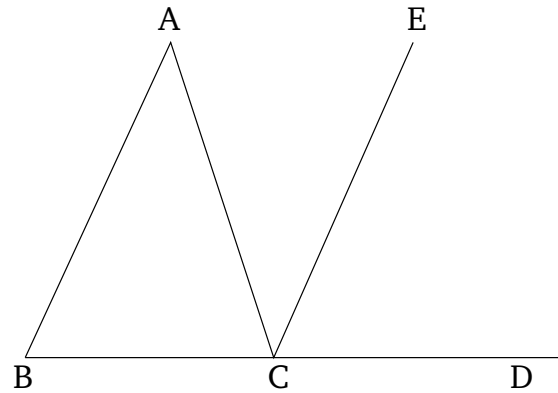
Ἐστω τρίγωνον τὸ ΑΒΓ, καὶ προσειβεβλήσθω αὐτοῦ μία πλευρὰ ἡ ΒΓ ἐπὶ τὸ Δ· λέγω, ὅτι ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ ἴση ἐστὶ δυοῖ ταῖς ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον ταῖς ὑπὸ ΓΑΒ, ΑΒΓ, καὶ αἱ ἐντὸς τοῦ τριγώνου τρεῖς γωνίαι αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΑ, ΓΑΒ δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν.

Ἦχθω γὰρ διὰ τοῦ Γ σημείου τῇ ΑΒ εὐθείᾳ παράλληλος ἡ ΓΕ.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ παράλληλός ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΕ, καὶ εἰς αὐτὰς ἐμπέπτωκεν ἡ ΑΓ, αἱ ἐναλλάξ γωνίαι αἱ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ, ΑΓΕ ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ παράλληλός ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΕ, καὶ εἰς αὐτὰς ἐμπέπτωκεν εὐθεῖα ἡ ΒΔ, ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΕΓΔ ἴση ἐστὶ τῇ ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΕ τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ ἴση· ὅλη ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ γωνία ἴση ἐστὶ δυοῖ ταῖς ἐντὸς

Proposition 32

For any triangle, (if) one of the sides (is) produced (then) the external angle is equal to the (sum of the) two internal and opposite (angles), and the (sum of the) three internal angles of the triangle is equal to two right-angles.



Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and let one of its sides  $BC$  have been produced to  $D$ . I say that the external angle  $ACD$  is equal to the (sum of the) two internal and opposite angles  $CAB$  and  $ABC$ , and the (sum of the) three internal angles of the triangle— $ABC$ ,  $BCA$ , and  $CAB$ —is equal to two right-angles.

For let  $CE$  have been drawn through point  $C$  parallel to the straight-line  $AB$  [Prop. 1.31].

And since  $AB$  is parallel to  $CE$ , and  $AC$  has fallen across them, the alternate angles  $BAC$  and  $ACE$  are equal to one another [Prop. 1.29]. Again, since  $AB$  is parallel to  $CE$ , and the straight-line  $BD$  has fallen across them, the external angle  $ECD$  is equal to the internal and opposite (angle)  $ABC$  [Prop. 1.29]. But  $ACE$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $BAC$ . Thus, the whole an-



καὶ ἀπεναντίον ταῖς ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ, ΑΒΓ.

Κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ· αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ, ΑΓΒ τρισὶ ταῖς ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΑ, ΓΑΒ ἴσαι εἰσίν. ἀλλ' αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ, ΑΓΒ δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ, ΓΒΑ, ΓΑΒ ἄρα δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν.

Παντὸς ἄρα τριγώνου μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν προσεκβληθείσης ἡ ἐκτὸς γωνία δυσὶ ταῖς ἐντὸς καὶ ἀπεναντίον ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ ἐντὸς τοῦ τριγώνου τρεῖς γωνίαι δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

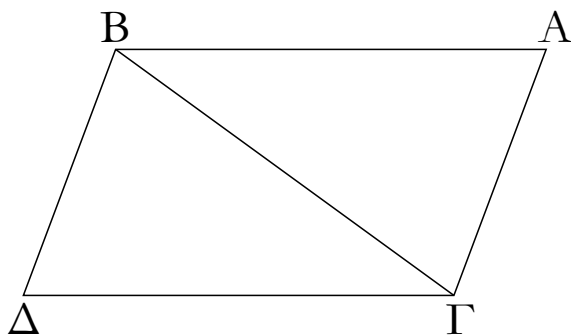
gle  $ACD$  is equal to the (sum of the) two internal and opposite (angles)  $BAC$  and  $ABC$ .

Let  $ACB$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $ACD$  and  $ACB$  is equal to the (sum of the) three (angles)  $ABC$ ,  $BCA$ , and  $CAB$ . But, (the sum of)  $ACD$  and  $ACB$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.13]. Thus, (the sum of)  $ACB$ ,  $CBA$ , and  $CAB$  is also equal to two right-angles.

Thus, for any triangle, (if) one of the sides (is) produced (then) the external angle is equal to the (sum of the) two internal and opposite (angles), and the (sum of the) three internal angles of the triangle is equal to two right-angles. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

λγ'.

Αἱ τὰς ἴσας τε καὶ παραλλήλους ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη ἐπιζευγνύουσαι εὐθεῖαι καὶ αὐταὶ ἴσας τε καὶ παράλληλοι εἰσιν.



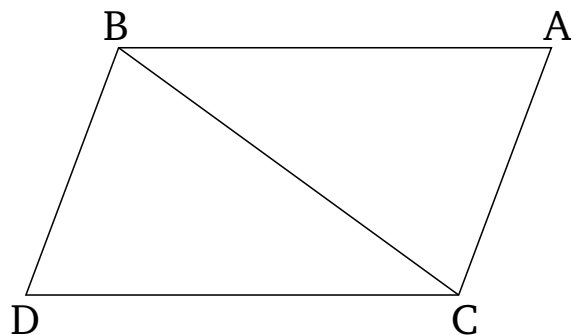
Ἐστῶσαν ἴσαι τε καὶ παράλληλοι αἱ ΑΒ, ΓΔ, καὶ ἐπιζευγνύτωσαν αὐτὰς ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη εὐθεῖαι αἱ ΑΓ, ΒΔ· λέγω, ὅτι καὶ αἱ ΑΓ, ΒΔ ἴσαι τε καὶ παράλληλοι εἰσιν.

Ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΒΓ. καὶ ἐπεὶ παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΔ, καὶ εἰς αὐτὰς ἐμπίπτωκεν ἡ ΒΓ, αἱ ἐναλλάξ γωνίαι αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΔ ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΔ κοινὴ δὲ ἡ ΒΓ, δύο δὴ αἱ ΑΒ, ΒΓ δύο ταῖς ΒΓ, ΓΔ ἴσαι εἰσίν· καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΓΔ ἴση· βάσις ἄρα ἡ ΑΓ βάσει τῇ ΒΔ ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΒΓΔ τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ γωνίαι ταῖς λοιπαῖς γωνίαις ἴσαι ἔσονται ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω, ὅφ' ἄς αἱ ἴσαι πλευραὶ ὑποτείνουσιν ἴση ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΒΔ. καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς δύο εὐθείας τὰς ΑΓ, ΒΔ εὐθεῖα ἐμπίπτουσα ἡ ΒΓ τὰς ἐναλλάξ γωνίας ἴσας ἀλλήλαις πεποίηκεν, παράλληλος ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΒΔ. ἐδείχθη δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ ἴση.

Αἱ ἄρα τὰς ἴσας τε καὶ παραλλήλους ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη ἐπιζευγνύουσαι εὐθεῖαι καὶ αὐταὶ ἴσαι τε καὶ παράλληλοι εἰσιν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

Proposition 33

Straight-lines joining equal and parallel (straight-lines) on the same sides are themselves also equal and parallel.



Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be equal and parallel (straight-lines), and let the straight-lines  $AC$  and  $BD$  join them on the same sides. I say that  $AC$  and  $BD$  are also equal and parallel.

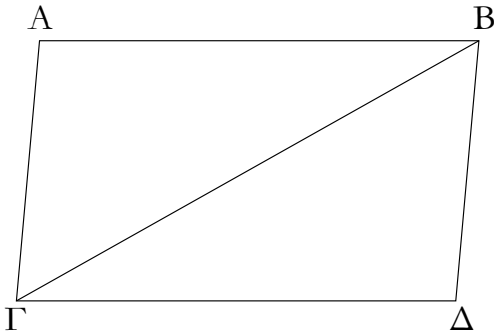
Let  $BC$  have been joined. And since  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ , and  $BC$  has fallen across them, the alternate angles  $ABC$  and  $BCD$  are equal to one another [Prop. 1.29]. And since  $AB$  and  $CD$  are equal, and  $BC$  is common, the two (straight-lines)  $AB$ ,  $BC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DC$ ,  $CB$ .<sup>†</sup> And the angle  $ABC$  is equal to the angle  $BCD$ . Thus, the base  $AC$  is equal to the base  $BD$ , and triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $BCD$ , and the remaining angles will be equal to the corresponding remaining angles subtended by the equal sides [Prop. 1.4]. Thus, angle  $ACB$  is equal to  $CBD$ . Also, since the straight-line  $BC$ , (in) falling across the two straight-lines  $AC$  and  $BD$ , has made the alternate angles ( $ACB$  and  $CBD$ ) equal to one another,  $AC$  is thus parallel to  $BD$  [Prop. 1.27]. And ( $AC$ ) was also shown (to be) equal to ( $BD$ ).

Thus, straight-lines joining equal and parallel (straight-

† The Greek text has “ $BC, CD$ ”, which is obviously a mistake.

λδ'.

Τῶν παραλληλογράμμων χωρίων αἱ ἀπεναντίον πλευραὶ τε καὶ γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν, καὶ ἡ διάμετρος αὐτὰ δίχα τέμνει.



Ἐστω παραλληλόγραμμον χωρίον τὸ ΑΓΔΒ, διάμετρος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἡ ΒΓ· λέγω, ὅτι τοῦ ΑΓΔΒ παραλληλογράμμου αἱ ἀπεναντίον πλευραὶ τε καὶ γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν, καὶ ἡ ΒΓ διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει.

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΔ, καὶ εἰς αὐτὰς ἐμπέπτωκεν εὐθεῖα ἡ ΒΓ, αἱ ἐναλλάξ γωνίαι αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΔ ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν. πάλιν ἐπεὶ παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΒΔ, καὶ εἰς αὐτὰς ἐμπέπτωκεν ἡ ΒΓ, αἱ ἐναλλάξ γωνίαι αἱ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ, ΓΒΔ ἴσας ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν. δύο δὲ τρίγωνά ἐστι τὰ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΔ τὰς δύο γωνίας τὰς ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ, ΒΓΑ δυοὶ ταῖς ὑπὸ ΒΓΔ, ΓΒΔ ἴσας ἔχοντα ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρα καὶ μίαν πλευρὰν μιᾷ πλευρᾷ ἴσην τὴν πρὸς ταῖς ἴσαις γωνίαις κοινήν αὐτῶν τὴν ΒΓ· καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς ἄρα πλευρὰς ταῖς λοιπαῖς ἴσας ἔξει ἑκατέραν ἑκατέρα καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν γωνίαν τῇ λοιπῇ γωνίᾳ ἴση ἄρα ἡ μὲν ΑΒ πλευρὰ τῇ ΓΔ, ἡ δὲ ΑΓ τῇ ΒΔ, καὶ ἔτι ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΔΒ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΓΔ, ἡ δὲ ὑπὸ ΓΒΔ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΒ, ὅλη ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΔ ὅλη τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΓΔ ἐστὶν ἴση. ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ ΒΑΓ τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΔΒ ἴση.

Τῶν ἄρα παραλληλογράμμων χωρίων αἱ ἀπεναντίον πλευραὶ τε καὶ γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν.

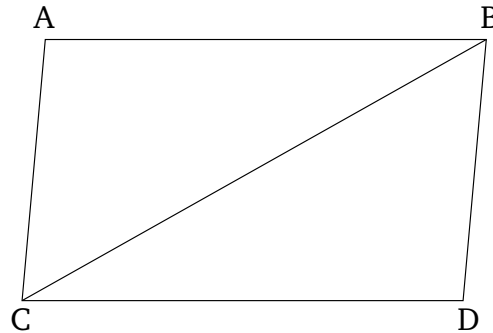
Λέγω δὲ, ὅτι καὶ ἡ διάμετρος αὐτὰ δίχα τέμνει. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΒ τῇ ΓΔ, κοινή δὲ ἡ ΒΓ, δύο δὲ αἱ ΑΒ, ΒΓ δυοὶ ταῖς ΓΔ, ΒΓ ἴσαι εἰσίν ἑκατέρα ἑκατέρα· καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ ΑΒΓ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΒΓΔ ἴση. καὶ βάσις ἄρα ἡ ΑΓ τῇ ΔΒ ἴση. καὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ [ἄρα] τρίγωνον τῷ ΒΓΔ τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἐστίν.

Ἡ ἄρα ΒΓ διάμετρος δίχα τέμνει τὸ ΑΒΓΔ παραλληλόγραμμον· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

lines) on the same sides are themselves also equal and parallel. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

### Proposition 34

For parallelogrammic figures, the opposite sides and angles are equal to one another, and a diagonal cuts them in half.



Let  $ACDB$  be a parallelogrammic figure, and  $BC$  its diagonal. I say that for parallelogram  $ACDB$ , the opposite sides and angles are equal to one another, and the diagonal  $BC$  cuts it in half.

For since  $AB$  is parallel to  $CD$ , and the straight-line  $BC$  has fallen across them, the alternate angles  $ABC$  and  $BCD$  are equal to one another [Prop. 1.29]. Again, since  $AC$  is parallel to  $BD$ , and  $BC$  has fallen across them, the alternate angles  $ACB$  and  $CBD$  are equal to one another [Prop. 1.29]. So  $ABC$  and  $BCD$  are two triangles having the two angles  $ABC$  and  $BCA$  equal to the two (angles)  $BCD$  and  $CBD$ , respectively, and one side equal to one side—the (one) common to the equal angles, (namely)  $BC$ . Thus, they will also have the remaining sides equal to the corresponding remaining (sides), and the remaining angle (equal) to the remaining angle [Prop. 1.26]. Thus, side  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ , and  $AC$  to  $BD$ . Furthermore, angle  $BAC$  is equal to  $CDB$ . And since angle  $ABC$  is equal to  $BCD$ , and  $CBD$  to  $ACB$ , the whole (angle)  $ABD$  is thus equal to the whole (angle)  $ACD$ . And  $BAC$  was also shown (to be) equal to  $CDB$ .

Thus, for parallelogrammic figures, the opposite sides and angles are equal to one another.

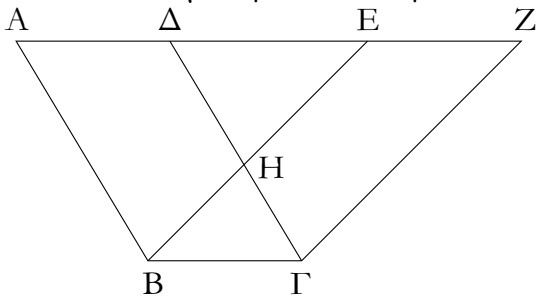
And, I also say that a diagonal cuts them in half. For since  $AB$  is equal to  $CD$ , and  $BC$  (is) common, the two (straight-lines)  $AB, BC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $DC, CB$ <sup>†</sup>, respectively. And angle  $ABC$  is equal to angle  $BCD$ . Thus, the base  $AC$  (is) also equal to  $DB$  [Prop. 1.4]. Also, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $BCD$  [Prop. 1.4].

† The Greek text has “ $CD, BC$ ”, which is obviously a mistake.

‡ The Greek text has “ $ABCD$ ”, which is obviously a mistake.

λε'.

Τὰ παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.



Ἐστω παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ  $ABΓΔ, EBΓZ$  ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως τῆς  $BΓ$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς  $AZ, BΓ$ · λέγω, ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓΔ$  τῷ  $EBΓZ$  παραλληλογράμμῳ.

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ παραλληλόγραμμὸν ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓΔ$ , ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ  $AD$  τῇ  $BΓ$ . διὰ τὰ αὐτὰ δὴ καὶ ἡ  $EZ$  τῇ  $BΓ$  ἐστὶν ἴση· ὥστε καὶ ἡ  $AD$  τῇ  $EZ$  ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ κοινὴ ἡ  $ΔE$ · ὅλη ἄρα ἡ  $AE$  ὅλη τῇ  $ΔZ$  ἐστὶν ἴση. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἡ  $AB$  τῇ  $ΔΓ$  ἴση· δύο δὴ αἱ  $EA, AB$  δύο ταῖς  $ZΔ, ΔΓ$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω· καὶ γωνία ἡ ὑπὸ  $ZΔΓ$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $EAB$  ἐστὶν ἴση ἢ ἐκτὸς τῇ ἐντὸς· βάσις ἄρα ἡ  $EB$  βάσει τῇ  $ZΓ$  ἴση ἐστίν, καὶ τὸ  $EAB$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $ΔZΓ$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον ἔσται· κοινὸν ἀφηρήσθω τὸ  $ΔHE$ · λοιπὸν ἄρα τὸ  $ABHΔ$  τραπέζιον λοιπῶ τῷ  $EHZ$  τραπέζιῳ ἐστὶν ἴσον· κοινὸν προσκεῖσθω τὸ  $HBIΓ$  τρίγωνον· ὅλον ἄρα τὸ  $ABΓΔ$  παραλληλόγραμμον ὅλον τῷ  $EBΓZ$  παραλληλογράμμῳ ἴσον ἐστίν.

Τὰ ἄρα παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

† Here, for the first time, “equal” means “equal in area”, rather than “congruent”.

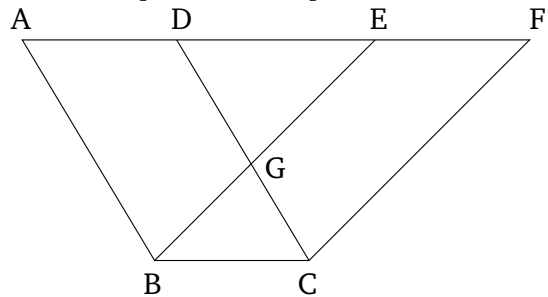
λς'.

Τὰ παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.

Ἐστω παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ  $ABΓΔ, EZHΘ$  ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα τῶν  $BΓ, ZH$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς  $AΘ, BH$ · λέγω, ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓΔ$  παραλληλόγραμμον τῷ  $EZHΘ$ .

Proposition 35

Parallelograms which are on the same base and between the same parallels are equal† to one another.



Let  $ABCD$  and  $EBCF$  be parallelograms on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $AF$  and  $BC$ . I say that  $ABCD$  is equal to parallelogram  $EBCF$ .

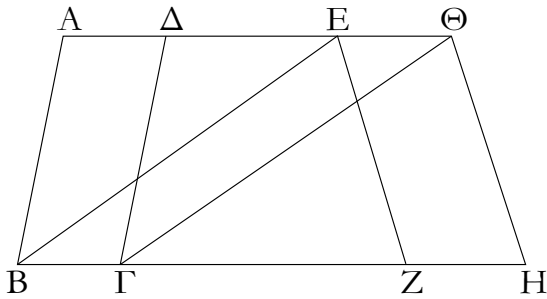
For since  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram,  $AD$  is equal to  $BC$  [Prop. 1.34]. So, for the same (reasons),  $EF$  is also equal to  $BC$ . So  $AD$  is also equal to  $EF$ . And  $DE$  is common. Thus, the whole (straight-line)  $AE$  is equal to the whole (straight-line)  $DF$ . And  $AB$  is also equal to  $DC$ . So the two (straight-lines)  $EA, AB$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $FD, DC$ , respectively. And angle  $FDC$  is equal to angle  $EAB$ , the external to the internal [Prop. 1.29]. Thus, the base  $EB$  is equal to the base  $FC$ , and triangle  $EAB$  will be equal to triangle  $DFC$  [Prop. 1.4]. Let  $DGE$  have been taken away from both. Thus, the remaining trapezium  $ABGD$  is equal to the remaining trapezium  $EGCF$ . Let triangle  $GBC$  have been added to both. Thus, the whole parallelogram  $ABCD$  is equal to the whole parallelogram  $EBCF$ .

Thus, parallelograms which are on the same base and between the same parallels are equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 36

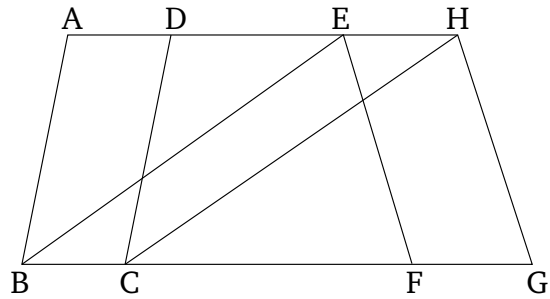
Parallelograms which are on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal to one another.

Let  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  be parallelograms which are on the equal bases  $BC$  and  $FG$ , and (are) between the same parallels  $AH$  and  $BG$ . I say that the parallelogram  $ABCD$  is equal to  $EFGH$ .



Ἐπεξεύχθωσαν γὰρ αἱ BE, ΓΘ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ BΓ τῇ ΖΗ, ἀλλὰ ἡ ΖΗ τῇ EΘ ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἡ BΓ ἄρα τῇ EΘ ἐστὶν ἴση. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ παράλληλοι. καὶ ἐπιζευγνύουσιν αὐτάς αἱ EB, ΘΓ· αἱ δὲ τὰς ἴσας τε καὶ παραλλήλους ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη ἐπιζευγνύουσαι ἴσαι τε καὶ παράλληλοι εἰσι [καὶ αἱ EB, ΘΓ ἄρα ἴσας τε εἰσι καὶ παράλληλοι]. παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ EBΓΘ. καὶ ἐστὶν ἴσον τῷ ABΓΔ· βάσιν τε γὰρ αὐτῶ τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχει τὴν BΓ, καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστὶν αὐτῶ ταῖς BΓ, AΘ. διὰ τὰ αὐτὰ δὴ καὶ τὸ EZHΘ τῷ αὐτῶ τῷ EBΓΘ ἐστὶν ἴσον· ὥστε καὶ τὸ ABΓΔ παραλληλόγραμμον τῷ EZHΘ ἐστὶν ἴσον.

Τὰ ἄρα παραλληλόγραμμα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

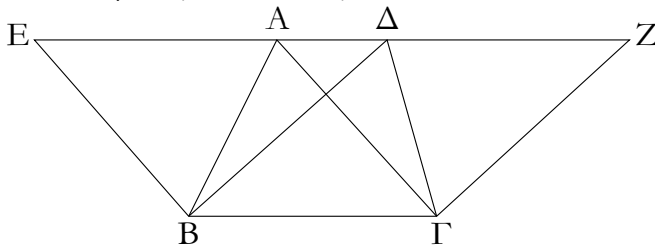


For let  $BE$  and  $CH$  have been joined. And since  $BC$  and  $FG$  are equal, but  $FG$  and  $EH$  are equal [Prop. 1.34],  $BC$  and  $EH$  are thus also equal. And they are also parallel, and  $EB$  and  $HC$  join them. But (straight-lines) joining equal and parallel (straight-lines) on the same sides are (themselves) equal and parallel [Prop. 1.33] [thus,  $EB$  and  $HC$  are also equal and parallel]. Thus,  $EBCH$  is a parallelogram [Prop. 1.34], and is equal to  $ABCD$ . For it has the same base,  $BC$ , as ( $ABCD$ ), and is between the same parallels,  $BC$  and  $AH$ , as ( $ABCD$ ) [Prop. 1.35]. So, for the same (reasons),  $EFGH$  is also equal to the same (parallelogram)  $EBCH$  [Prop. 1.34]. So that the parallelogram  $ABCD$  is also equal to  $EFGH$ .

Thus, parallelograms which are on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

λζ'.

Τὰ τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.

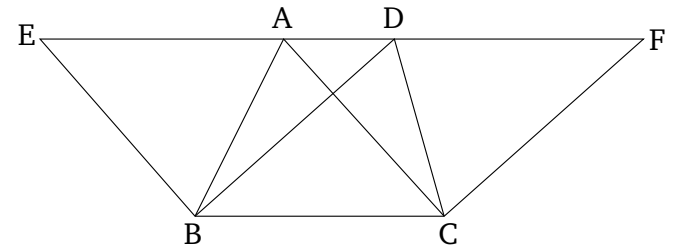


Ἐστω τρίγωνα τὰ ABΓ, ΔBΓ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως τῆς BΓ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς AD, BΓ· λέγω, ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ABΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΔBΓ τριγώνῳ.

Ἐμβεβλήσθω ἡ AD ἐφ' ἐκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐπὶ τὰ E, Z, καὶ διὰ μὲν τοῦ B τῇ ΓA παράλληλος ἤχθω ἡ BE, διὰ δὲ τοῦ Γ τῇ BΔ παράλληλος ἤχθω ἡ ΓZ. παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶν ἐκάτερον τῶν EBΓA, ΔBΓZ· καὶ εἰσὶ ἴσα· ἐπὶ τε γὰρ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως εἰσὶ τῆς BΓ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς BΓ, EZ· καὶ ἐστὶ τοῦ μὲν EBΓA παραλληλογράμμου ἡμισυ τὸ ABΓ τρίγωνον· ἡ γὰρ AB διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει· τοῦ δὲ ΔBΓZ παραλληλογράμμου ἡμισυ τὸ ΔBΓ τρίγωνον· ἡ γὰρ ΔΓ

Proposition 37

Triangles which are on the same base and between the same parallels are equal to one another.



Let  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  be triangles on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $AD$  and  $BC$ . I say that triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $DBC$ .

Let  $AD$  have been produced in each direction to  $E$  and  $F$ , and let the (straight-line)  $BE$  have been drawn through  $B$  parallel to  $CA$  [Prop. 1.31], and let the (straight-line)  $CF$  have been drawn through  $C$  parallel to  $BD$  [Prop. 1.31]. Thus,  $EBCA$  and  $DBC F$  are both parallelograms, and are equal. For they are on the same base  $BC$ , and between the same parallels  $BC$  and  $EF$  [Prop. 1.35]. And the triangle  $ABC$  is half of the parallelogram  $EBCA$ . For the diagonal  $AB$  cuts the latter in

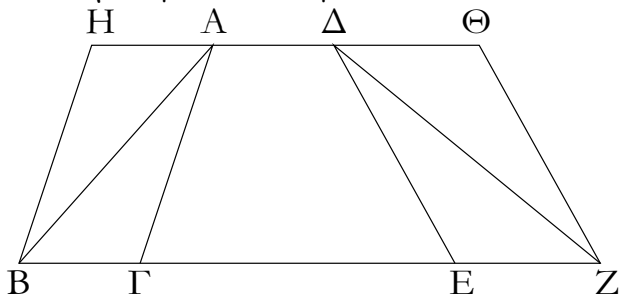
διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει. [τὰ δὲ τῶν ἴσων ἡμίση ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν]. ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓ$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $ΔΒΓ$  τριγώνῳ.

Τὰ ἄρα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

† This is an additional common notion.

λη'.

Τὰ τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.



Ἐστω τρίγωνα τὰ  $ABΓ$ ,  $ΔΕΖ$  ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων τῶν  $BΓ$ ,  $EZ$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς  $BZ$ ,  $ΑΔ$ · λέγω, ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓ$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $ΔΕΖ$  τριγώνῳ.

Ἐμβεβλήσθω γὰρ ἡ  $ΑΔ$  ἐφ' ἐκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐπὶ τὰ  $H$ ,  $Θ$ , καὶ διὰ μὲν τοῦ  $B$  τῆ  $ΓΑ$  παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ  $BH$ , δια δὲ τοῦ  $Z$  τῆ  $ΔΕ$  παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ  $ZΘ$ . παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶν ἐκάτερον τῶν  $HBΓΑ$ ,  $ΔΕΖΘ$ · καὶ ἴσον τὸ  $HBΓΑ$  τῷ  $ΔΕΖΘ$ · ἐπὶ τε γὰρ ἴσων βάσεων εἰσι τῶν  $BΓ$ ,  $EZ$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς  $BZ$ ,  $HΘ$ · καὶ ἐστὶ τοῦ μὲν  $HBΓΑ$  παραλληλογράμμου ἡμισυ τὸ  $ABΓ$  τρίγωνον. ἡ γὰρ  $AB$  διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει· τοῦ δὲ  $ΔΕΖΘ$  παραλληλογράμμου ἡμισυ τὸ  $ZΕΔ$  τρίγωνον· ἡ γὰρ  $ΔZ$  διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει [τὰ δὲ τῶν ἴσων ἡμίση ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν]. ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABΓ$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $ΔΕΖ$  τριγώνῳ.

Τὰ ἄρα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

λθ'.

Τὰ ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστίν.

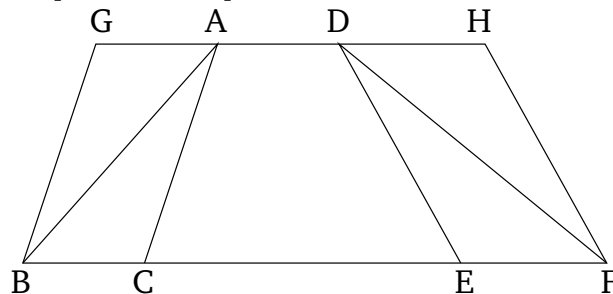
Ἐστω ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ  $ABΓ$ ,  $ΔΒΓ$  ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη τῆς  $BΓ$ · λέγω, ὅτι

half [Prop. 1.34]. And the triangle  $DBC$  (is) half of the parallelogram  $DBCF$ . For the diagonal  $DC$  cuts the latter in half [Prop. 1.34]. [And the halves of equal things are equal to one another.]† Thus, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $DBC$ .

Thus, triangles which are on the same base and between the same parallels are equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 38

Triangles which are on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal to one another.



Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be triangles on the equal bases  $BC$  and  $EF$ , and between the same parallels  $BF$  and  $AD$ . I say that triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $DEF$ .

For let  $AD$  have been produced in each direction to  $G$  and  $H$ , and let the (straight-line)  $BG$  have been drawn through  $B$  parallel to  $CA$  [Prop. 1.31], and let the (straight-line)  $FH$  have been drawn through  $F$  parallel to  $DE$  [Prop. 1.31]. Thus,  $GBCA$  and  $DEFH$  are each parallelograms. And  $GBCA$  is equal to  $DEFH$ . For they are on the equal bases  $BC$  and  $EF$ , and between the same parallels  $BF$  and  $GH$  [Prop. 1.36]. And triangle  $ABC$  is half of the parallelogram  $GBCA$ . For the diagonal  $AB$  cuts the latter in half [Prop. 1.34]. And triangle  $FED$  (is) half of parallelogram  $DEFH$ . For the diagonal  $DF$  cuts the latter in half. [And the halves of equal things are equal to one another]. Thus, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $DEF$ .

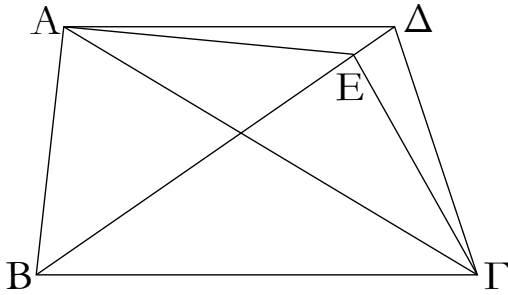
Thus, triangles which are on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 39

Equal triangles which are on the same base, and on the same side, are also between the same parallels.

Let  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  be equal triangles which are on the same base  $BC$ , and on the same side. I say that they

καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστίν.



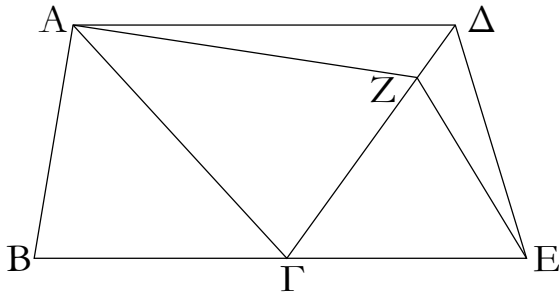
Ἐπεζεύχθω γὰρ ἡ ΑΔ· λέγω, ὅτι παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΔ τῇ ΒΓ.

Εἰ γὰρ μή, ἤχθω διὰ τοῦ Α σημείου τῇ ΒΓ εὐθεία παράλληλος ἡ ΑΕ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΕΓ. ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΕΒΓ τριγώνῳ· ἐπὶ τε γὰρ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ἐστὶν αὐτῷ τῆς ΒΓ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις. ἀλλὰ τὸ ΑΒΓ τῷ ΔΒΓ ἐστὶν ἴσον· καὶ τὸ ΔΒΓ ἄρα τῷ ΕΒΓ ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ μείζον τῷ ἐλάσσονι· ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύνατον· οὐκ ἄρα παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΕ τῇ ΒΓ. ὁμοίως δὲ δείξομεν, ὅτι οὐδ' ἄλλη τις πλὴν τῆς ΑΔ· ἡ ΑΔ ἄρα τῇ ΒΓ ἐστὶ παράλληλος.

Τὰ ἄρα ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ὄντα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστίν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

μ'.

Τὰ ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστίν.

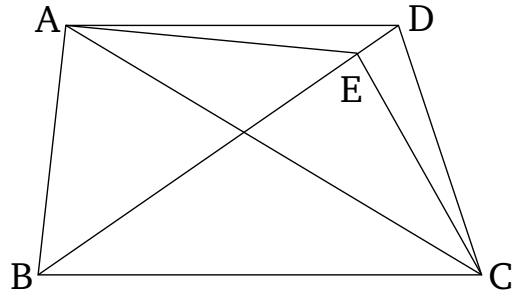


Ἐστω ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ ΑΒΓ, ΓΔΕ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων τῶν ΒΓ, ΓΕ καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη. λέγω, ὅτι καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστίν.

Ἐπεζεύχθω γὰρ ἡ ΑΔ· λέγω, ὅτι παράλληλός ἐστιν ἡ ΑΔ τῇ ΒΕ.

Εἰ γὰρ μή, ἤχθω διὰ τοῦ Α τῇ ΒΕ παράλληλος ἡ ΑΖ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΖΕ. ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΖΓΕ τριγώνῳ· ἐπὶ τε γὰρ ἴσων βάσεων εἰσι τῶν ΒΓ, ΓΕ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς ΒΕ, ΑΖ. ἀλλὰ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον ἴσον ἐστὶ τῷ ΔΓΕ [τριγώνῳ]· καὶ τὸ ΔΓΕ ἄρα [τριγώνον] ἴσον ἐστὶ τῷ ΖΓΕ

are also between the same parallels.



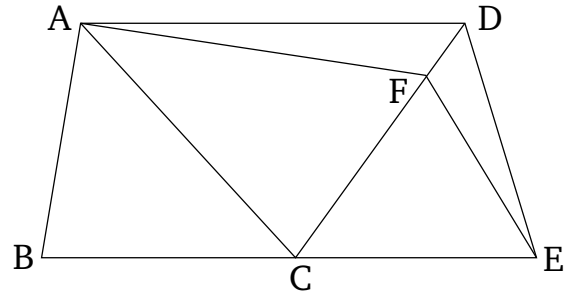
For let  $AD$  have been joined. I say that  $AD$  and  $AC$  are parallel.

For, if not, let  $AE$  have been drawn through point  $A$  parallel to the straight-line  $BC$  [Prop. 1.31], and let  $EC$  have been joined. Thus, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $EBC$ . For it is on the same base as it,  $BC$ , and between the same parallels [Prop. 1.37]. But  $ABC$  is equal to  $DBC$ . Thus,  $DBC$  is also equal to  $EBC$ , the greater to the lesser. The very thing is impossible. Thus,  $AE$  is not parallel to  $BC$ . Similarly, we can show that neither (is) any other (straight-line) than  $AD$ . Thus,  $AD$  is parallel to  $BC$ .

Thus, equal triangles which are on the same base, and on the same side, are also between the same parallels. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

Proposition 40<sup>†</sup>

Equal triangles which are on equal bases, and on the same side, are also between the same parallels.



Let  $ABC$  and  $CDE$  be equal triangles on the equal bases  $BC$  and  $CE$  (respectively), and on the same side. I say that they are also between the same parallels.

For let  $AD$  have been joined. I say that  $AD$  is parallel to  $BE$ .

For if not, let  $AF$  have been drawn through  $A$  parallel to  $BE$  [Prop. 1.31], and let  $FE$  have been joined. Thus, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $FCE$ . For they are on equal bases,  $BC$  and  $CE$ , and between the same parallels,  $BE$  and  $AF$  [Prop. 1.38]. But, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to [triangle]  $DCE$ . Thus, [triangle]  $DCE$  is also equal to

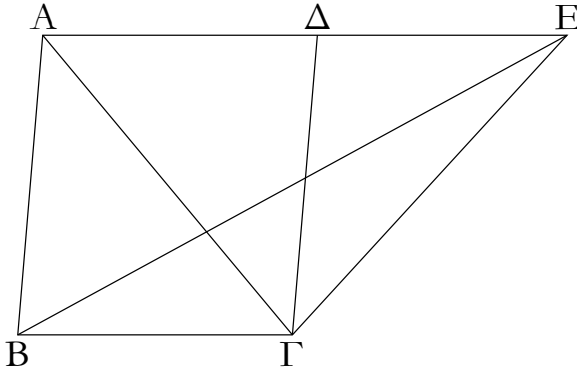
τριγώνω τὸ μείζον τῷ ἐλάσσονι· ὅπερ ἐστὶν ἀδύνατον· οὐκ ἄρα παράλληλος ἡ  $AZ$  τῇ  $BE$ . ὁμοίως δὴ δείξομεν, ὅτι οὐδ' ἄλλη τις πλὴν τῆς  $AD$ · ἡ  $AD$  ἄρα τῇ  $BE$  ἐστὶ παράλληλος.

Τὰ ἄρα ἴσα τρίγωνα τὰ ἐπὶ ἴσων βάσεων ὄντα καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἐστὶν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

† This whole proposition is regarded by Heiberg as a relatively early interpolation to the original text.

μα'.

Ἐὰν παραλληλόγραμμον τριγώνω βάσιν τε ἔχη τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ᾗ, διπλάσιόν ἐστὶ τὸ παραλληλόγραμμον τοῦ τριγώνου.



Παραλληλόγραμμον γὰρ τὸ  $ABGD$  τριγώνω τῷ  $EBG$  βάσιν τε ἐχέτω τὴν αὐτὴν τὴν  $BG$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ἔστω ταῖς  $BG$ ,  $AE$ · λέγω, ὅτι διπλάσιόν ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABGD$  παραλληλόγραμμον τοῦ  $EBG$  τριγώνου.

Ἐπεζεύχθω γὰρ ἡ  $AG$ . ἴσον δὴ ἐστὶ τὸ  $ABG$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $EBG$  τριγώνω· ἐπὶ τε γὰρ τῆς αὐτῆς βάσεως ἐστὶν αὐτῷ τῆς  $BG$  καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς  $BG$ ,  $AE$ . ἀλλὰ τὸ  $ABGD$  παραλληλόγραμμον διπλάσιόν ἐστὶ τοῦ  $ABG$  τριγώνου· ἡ γὰρ  $AG$  διάμετρος αὐτὸ δίχα τέμνει· ὥστε τὸ  $ABGD$  παραλληλόγραμμον καὶ τοῦ  $EBG$  τριγώνου ἐστὶ διπλάσιον.

Ἐὰν ἄρα παραλληλόγραμμον τριγώνω βάσιν τε ἔχη τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ᾗ, διπλάσιόν ἐστὶ τὸ παραλληλόγραμμον τοῦ τριγώνου· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

μβ'.

Τῷ δοθέντι τριγώνω ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συστήσασθαι ἐν τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθυγράμμω.

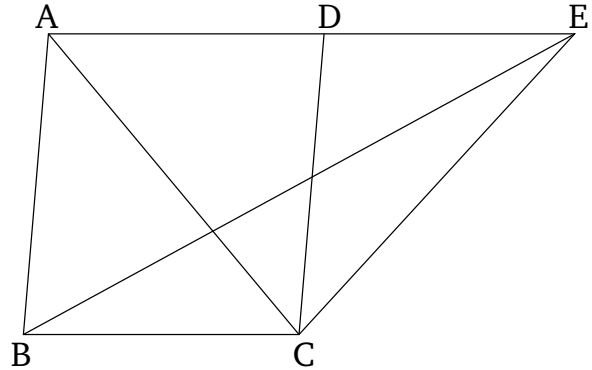
Ἐστω τὸ μὲν δοθὲν τρίγωνον τὸ  $ABG$ , ἡ δὲ δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἡ  $\Delta$ · δεῖ δὴ τῷ  $ABG$  τριγώνω ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συστήσασθαι ἐν τῇ  $\Delta$  γωνίᾳ εὐθυγράμμω.

triangle  $FCE$ , the greater to the lesser. The very thing is impossible. Thus,  $AF$  is not parallel to  $BE$ . Similarly, we can show that neither (is) any other (straight-line) than  $AD$ . Thus,  $AD$  is parallel to  $BE$ .

Thus, equal triangles which are on equal bases, and on the same side, are also between the same parallels. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

## Proposition 41

If a parallelogram has the same base as a triangle, and is between the same parallels, then the parallelogram is double (the area) of the triangle.



For let parallelogram  $ABCD$  have the same base  $BC$  as triangle  $EBC$ , and let it be between the same parallels,  $BC$  and  $AE$ . I say that parallelogram  $ABCD$  is double (the area) of triangle  $BEC$ .

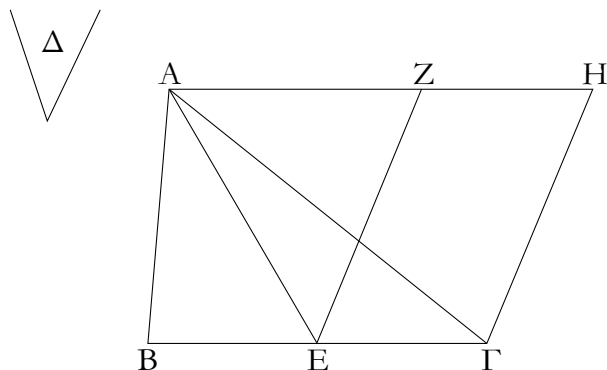
For let  $AC$  have been joined. So triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $EBC$ . For it is on the same base,  $BC$ , as ( $EBC$ ), and between the same parallels,  $BC$  and  $AE$  [Prop. 1.37]. But, parallelogram  $ABCD$  is double (the area) of triangle  $ABC$ . For the diagonal  $AC$  cuts the former in half [Prop. 1.34]. So parallelogram  $ABCD$  is also double (the area) of triangle  $EBC$ .

Thus, if a parallelogram has the same base as a triangle, and is between the same parallels, then the parallelogram is double (the area) of the triangle. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

## Proposition 42

To construct a parallelogram equal to a given triangle in a given rectilinear angle.

Let  $ABC$  be the given triangle, and  $D$  the given rectilinear angle. So it is required to construct a parallelogram equal to triangle  $ABC$  in the rectilinear angle  $D$ .



Τετμήσθω ἡ ΒΓ δίχα κατὰ τὸ Ε, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΑΕ, καὶ συνεστάτω πρὸς τῇ ΕΓ εὐθείᾳ καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ Ε τῇ Δ γωνίᾳ ἴση ἡ ὑπὸ ΓΕΖ, καὶ διὰ μὲν τοῦ Α τῇ ΕΓ παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ ΑΗ, διὰ δὲ τοῦ Γ τῇ ΕΖ παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ ΓΗ· παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΖΕΓΗ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΒΕ τῇ ΕΓ, ἴσον ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ ΑΒΕ τρίγωνον τῷ ΑΕΓ τριγώνῳ· ἐπὶ τε γὰρ ἴσων βάσεων εἰσι τῶν ΒΕ, ΕΓ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς παραλλήλοις ταῖς ΒΓ, ΑΗ· διπλάσιον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον τοῦ ΑΕΓ τριγώνου. ἔστι δὲ καὶ τὸ ΖΕΓΗ παραλληλόγραμμον διπλάσιον τοῦ ΑΕΓ τριγώνου· βάσιν τε γὰρ αὐτῷ τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχει καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς ἐστὶν αὐτῷ παραλλήλοις· ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΖΕΓΗ παραλληλόγραμμον τῷ ΑΒΓ τριγώνῳ. καὶ ἔχει τὴν ὑπὸ ΓΕΖ γωνίαν ἴσην τῇ δοθείσῃ τῇ Δ.

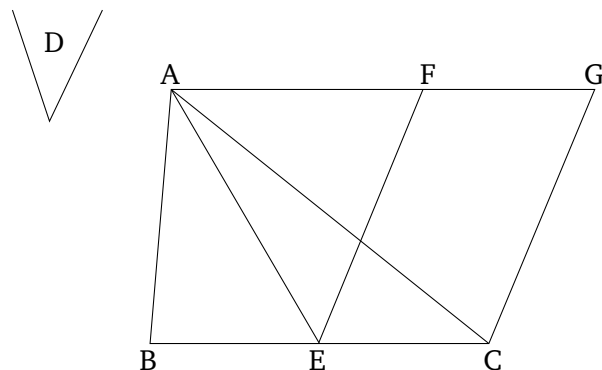
Τῷ ἄρα δοθέντι τριγώνῳ τῷ ΑΒΓ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συνέσταται τὸ ΖΕΓΗ ἐν γωνίᾳ τῇ ὑπὸ ΓΕΖ, ἣτις ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ Δ· ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

μγ'.

Παντὸς παραλληλογράμμου τῶν περὶ τὴν διάμετρον παραλληλογράμμων τὰ παραπληρώματα ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν.

Ἐστω παραλληλόγραμμον τὸ ΑΒΓΔ, διάμετρος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἡ ΑΓ, περὶ δὲ τὴν ΑΓ παραλληλόγραμμα μὲν ἔστω τὰ ΕΘ, ΖΗ, τὰ δὲ λεγόμενα παραπληρώματα τὰ ΒΚ, ΚΔ· λέγω, ὅτι ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ΒΚ παραπλήρωμα τῷ ΚΔ παραπληρώματι.

Ἐπεὶ γὰρ παραλληλόγραμμον ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒΓΔ, διάμετρος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἡ ΑΓ, ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΑΓΔ τριγώνῳ. πάλιν, ἐπεὶ παραλληλόγραμμον ἐστὶ τὸ ΕΘ, διάμετρος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ ΑΚ, ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΕΚ τρίγωνον τῷ ΑΘΚ τριγώνῳ. διὰ τὰ αὐτὰ δὴ καὶ τὸ ΚΖΓ τρίγωνον τῷ ΚΗΓ ἐστὶν ἴσον. ἐπεὶ οὖν τὸ μὲν ΑΕΚ τρίγωνον τῷ ΑΘΚ τριγώνῳ ἐστὶν ἴσον, τὸ δὲ ΚΖΓ τῷ ΚΗΓ, τὸ ΑΕΚ τρίγωνον μετὰ τοῦ ΚΗΓ ἴσον ἐστὶ τῷ ΑΘΚ τριγώνῳ μετὰ τοῦ ΚΖΓ· ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὅλον



Let  $BC$  have been cut in half at  $E$  [Prop. 1.10], and let  $AE$  have been joined. And let (angle)  $CEF$ , equal to angle  $D$ , have been constructed at the point  $E$  on the straight-line  $EC$  [Prop. 1.23]. And let  $AG$  have been drawn through  $A$  parallel to  $EC$  [Prop. 1.31], and let  $CG$  have been drawn through  $C$  parallel to  $EF$  [Prop. 1.31]. Thus,  $FECG$  is a parallelogram. And since  $BE$  is equal to  $EC$ , triangle  $ABE$  is also equal to triangle  $AEC$ . For they are on the equal bases,  $BE$  and  $EC$ , and between the same parallels,  $BC$  and  $AG$  [Prop. 1.38]. Thus, triangle  $ABC$  is double (the area) of triangle  $AEC$ . And parallelogram  $FECG$  is also double (the area) of triangle  $AEC$ . For it has the same base as ( $AEC$ ), and is between the same parallels as ( $AEC$ ) [Prop. 1.41]. Thus, parallelogram  $FECG$  is equal to triangle  $ABC$ . ( $FECG$ ) also has the angle  $CEF$  equal to the given (angle)  $D$ .

Thus, parallelogram  $FECG$ , equal to the given triangle  $ABC$ , has been constructed in the angle  $CEF$ , which is equal to  $D$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

### Proposition 43

For any parallelogram, the complements of the parallelograms about the diagonal are equal to one another.

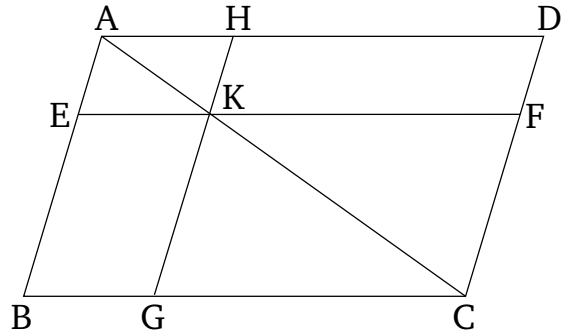
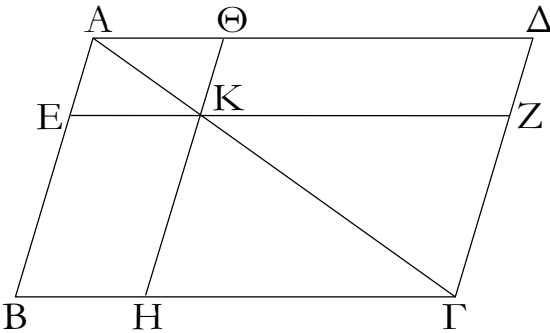
Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram, and  $AC$  its diagonal. And let  $EH$  and  $FG$  be the parallelograms about  $AC$ , and  $BK$  and  $KD$  the so-called complements (about  $AC$ ). I say that the complement  $BK$  is equal to the complement  $KD$ .

For since  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram, and  $AC$  its diagonal, triangle  $ABC$  is equal to triangle  $ACD$  [Prop. 1.34]. Again, since  $EH$  is a parallelogram, and  $AK$  is its diagonal, triangle  $AEK$  is equal to triangle  $AHK$  [Prop. 1.34]. So, for the same (reasons), triangle  $KFC$  is also equal to (triangle)  $KGC$ . Therefore, since triangle  $AEK$  is equal to triangle  $AHK$ , and  $KFC$  to  $KGC$ , triangle  $AEK$  plus  $KGC$  is equal to triangle  $AHK$  plus  $KFC$ . And the whole triangle  $ABC$  is also equal to the whole (triangle)  $ADC$ . Thus, the remaining complement  $BK$  is equal to



τὸ ABΓ τρίγωνον ὅλω τῷ AΔΓ ἴσον· λοιπὸν ἄρα τὸ BK παραπλήρωμα λοιπῷ τῷ KΔ παραπληρώματι ἐστὶν ἴσον.

the remaining complement  $KD$ .



Παντὸς ἄρα παραλληλογράμμου χωρίου τῶν περι τὴν διάμετρον παραλληλογράμμων τὰ παραπληρώματα ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστὶν· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

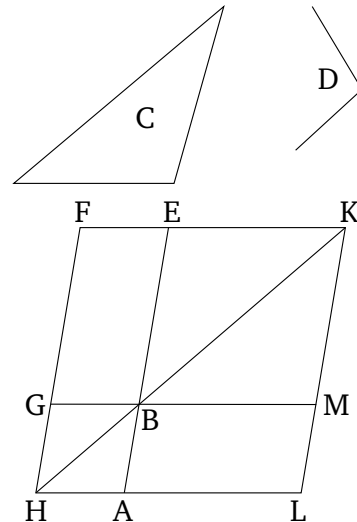
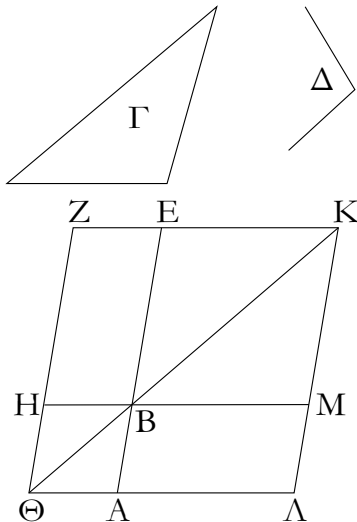
Thus, for any parallelogramic figure, the complements of the parallelograms about the diagonal are equal to one another. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

μδ'.

Proposition 44

Παρά τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν τῷ δοθέντι τριγώνῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον παραβαλεῖν ἐν τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθύγραμμῳ.

To apply a parallelogram equal to a given triangle to a given straight-line in a given rectilinear angle.



Ἐστω ἡ μὲν δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἡ AB, τὸ δὲ δοθὲν τρίγωνον τὸ Γ, ἡ δὲ δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἡ Δ· δεῖ δὴ παρὰ τὴν δοθεῖσαν εὐθεῖαν τὴν AB τῷ δοθέντι τριγώνῳ τῷ Γ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον παραβαλεῖν ἐν ἴσῃ τῇ Δ γωνίᾳ.

Let  $AB$  be the given straight-line,  $C$  the given triangle, and  $D$  the given rectilinear angle. So it is required to apply a parallelogram equal to the given triangle  $C$  to the given straight-line  $AB$  in an angle equal to  $D$ .

Συνεστάτω τῷ Γ τριγώνῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον τὸ BEZH ἐν γωνίᾳ τῇ ὑπὸ EBH, ἣ ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ Δ· καὶ κείσθω ὥστε ἐπ' εὐθείας εἶναι τὴν BE τῇ AB, καὶ διήχθω ἡ ZH ἐπὶ τὸ Θ, καὶ διὰ τοῦ A ὁποτέρῃ τῶν BH, EZ παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ AΘ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΘB. καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς παραλλήλους τὰς AΘ, EZ εὐθεῖα ἐπέπεσεν ἡ ΘZ, αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ AΘZ, ΘZE γωνίαι δυσὶν

Let the parallelogram  $BEFG$ , equal to the triangle  $C$ , have been constructed in the angle  $EBG$ , which is equal to  $D$  [Prop. 1.42]. And let it have been placed so that  $BE$  is straight-on to  $AB$ .<sup>†</sup> And let  $FG$  have been drawn through to  $H$ , and let  $AH$  have been drawn through  $A$  parallel to either of  $BG$  or  $EF$  [Prop. 1.31], and let  $HB$  have been joined. And since the straight-line  $HF$  falls across the parallel-lines  $AH$  and  $EF$ , the (sum of the)

ὀρθαῖς εἰσιν ἴσαι. αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ ΒΘΗ, ΗΖΕ δύο ὀρθῶν ἐλάσσονές εἰσιν· αἱ δὲ ἀπὸ ἐλασσόνων ἢ δύο ὀρθῶν εἰς ἄπειρον ἐκβαλλόμεναι συμπίπτουσιν· αἱ ΘΒ, ΖΕ ἄρα ἐκβαλλόμεναι συμπεσοῦνται. ἐκβεβλήσθωσαν καὶ συμπιπέτωσαν κατὰ τὸ Κ, καὶ διὰ τοῦ Κ σημείου ὁποτέρᾳ τῶν ΕΑ, ΖΘ παράλληλος ἦχθω ἢ ΚΛ, καὶ ἐκβεβλήσθωσαν αἱ ΘΑ, ΗΒ ἐπὶ τὰ Λ, Μ σημεία. παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΘΑΚΖ, διάμετρος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἢ ΘΚ, περὶ δὲ τὴν ΘΚ παραλληλόγραμμα μὲν τὰ ΑΗ, ΜΕ, τὰ δὲ λεγόμενα παραπληρώματα τὰ ΑΒ, ΒΖ· ἴσον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ ΑΒ τῷ ΒΖ. ἀλλὰ τὸ ΒΖ τῷ Γ τριγώνῳ ἐστὶν ἴσον· καὶ τὸ ΑΒ ἄρα τῷ Γ ἐστὶν ἴσον. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἢ ὑπὸ ΗΒΕ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΒΜ, ἀλλὰ ἢ ὑπὸ ΗΒΕ τῇ Δ ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἢ ὑπὸ ΑΒΜ ἄρα τῇ Δ γωνία ἐστὶν ἴση.

Παρὰ τὴν δοθεῖσαν ἄρα εὐθεῖαν τὴν ΑΒ τῷ δοθέντι τριγώνῳ τῷ Γ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον παραβέβληται τὸ ΑΒ ἐν γωνίᾳ τῇ ὑπὸ ΑΒΜ, ἢ ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ Δ· ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

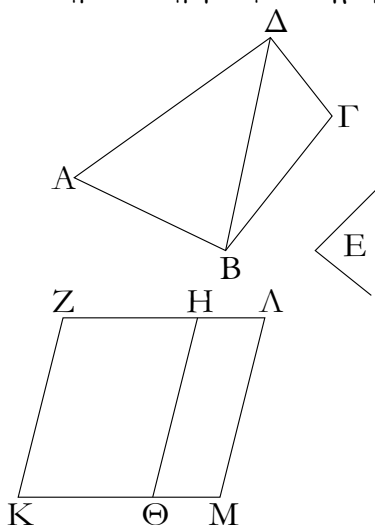
† This can be achieved using Props. 1.3, 1.23, and 1.31.

angles  $AHF$  and  $HFE$  is thus equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.29]. Thus, (the sum of)  $BHG$  and  $GFE$  is less than two right-angles. And (straight-lines) produced to infinity from (internal angles whose sum is) less than two right-angles meet together [Post. 5]. Thus, being produced,  $HB$  and  $FE$  will meet together. Let them have been produced, and let them meet together at  $K$ . And let  $KL$  have been drawn through point  $K$  parallel to either of  $EA$  or  $FH$  [Prop. 1.31]. And let  $HA$  and  $GB$  have been produced to points  $L$  and  $M$  (respectively). Thus,  $HLKF$  is a parallelogram, and  $HK$  its diagonal. And  $AG$  and  $ME$  (are) parallelograms, and  $LB$  and  $BF$  the so-called complements, about  $HK$ . Thus,  $LB$  is equal to  $BF$  [Prop. 1.43]. But,  $BF$  is equal to triangle  $C$ . Thus,  $LB$  is also equal to  $C$ . Also, since angle  $GBE$  is equal to  $ABM$  [Prop. 1.15], but  $GBE$  is equal to  $D$ ,  $ABM$  is thus also equal to angle  $D$ .

Thus, the parallelogram  $LB$ , equal to the given triangle  $C$ , has been applied to the given straight-line  $AB$  in the angle  $ABM$ , which is equal to  $D$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

με'.

Τῷ δοθέντι εὐθύγραμμῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συστήσασθαι ἐν τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ εὐθύγραμμῳ.

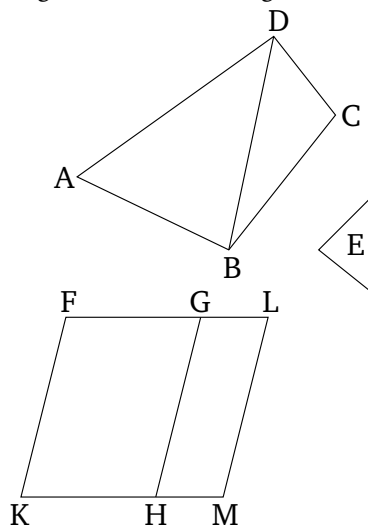


Ἐστω τὸ μὲν δοθὲν εὐθύγραμμον τὸ ΑΒΓΔ, ἢ δὲ δοθεῖσα γωνία εὐθύγραμμος ἢ Ε· δεῖ δὴ τῷ ΑΒΓΔ εὐθύγραμμῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συστήσασθαι ἐν τῇ δοθείσῃ γωνίᾳ τῇ Ε.

Ἐπεζύχθω ἢ ΔΒ, καὶ συνεστάτω τῷ ΑΒΔ τριγώνῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον τὸ ΖΘ ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ ΘΚΖ γωνίᾳ, ἢ ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ Ε· καὶ παραβεβλήσθω παρὰ τὴν ΗΘ

Proposition 45

To construct a parallelogram equal to a given rectilinear figure in a given rectilinear angle.



Let  $ABCD$  be the given rectilinear figure,<sup>†</sup> and  $E$  the given rectilinear angle. So it is required to construct a parallelogram equal to the rectilinear figure  $ABCD$  in the given angle  $E$ .

Let  $DB$  have been joined, and let the parallelogram  $FH$ , equal to the triangle  $ABD$ , have been constructed in the angle  $HKF$ , which is equal to  $E$  [Prop. 1.42]. And let

εὐθεῖαν τῷ  $\Delta\text{B}\Gamma$  τριγώνῳ ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον τὸ  $\text{H}\text{M}$  ἐν τῇ ὑπὸ  $\text{H}\text{O}\text{M}$  γωνίᾳ, ἣ ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ  $\text{E}$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡ  $\text{E}$  γωνία ἐκατέρω τῶν ὑπὸ  $\text{O}\text{K}\text{Z}$ ,  $\text{H}\text{O}\text{M}$  ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $\text{O}\text{K}\text{Z}$  ἄρα τῇ ὑπὸ  $\text{H}\text{O}\text{M}$  ἐστὶν ἴση. κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $\text{K}\text{O}\text{H}$ · αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $\text{Z}\text{K}\text{O}$ ,  $\text{K}\text{O}\text{H}$  ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\text{K}\text{O}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{H}\text{O}\text{M}$  ἴσαι εἰσίν. ἀλλ' αἱ ὑπὸ  $\text{Z}\text{K}\text{O}$ ,  $\text{K}\text{O}\text{H}$  δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\text{K}\text{O}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{H}\text{O}\text{M}$  ἄρα δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσας εἰσίν. πρὸς δὴ τινὶ εὐθεῖᾳ τῇ  $\text{H}\text{O}$  καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $\text{O}$  δύο εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $\text{K}\text{O}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{M}$  μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη κείμεναι τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιοῦσιν· ἐπ' εὐθείας ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $\text{K}\text{O}$  τῇ  $\text{O}\text{M}$ · καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰς παραλλήλους τὰς  $\text{K}\text{M}$ ,  $\text{Z}\text{H}$  εὐθεῖα ἐνέπεσεν ἡ  $\text{O}\text{H}$ , αἱ ἐναλλάξ γωνίαί αἱ ὑπὸ  $\text{M}\text{O}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{Z}$  ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν. κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{A}$ · αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $\text{M}\text{O}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{A}$  ταῖς ὑπὸ  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{Z}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{A}$  ἴσαι εἰσίν. ἀλλ' αἱ ὑπὸ  $\text{M}\text{O}\text{H}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{A}$  δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· καὶ αἱ ὑπὸ  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{Z}$ ,  $\text{O}\text{H}\text{A}$  ἄρα δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν· ἐπ' εὐθείας ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $\text{Z}\text{H}$  τῇ  $\text{H}\text{A}$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡ  $\text{Z}\text{K}$  τῇ  $\text{O}\text{H}$  ἴση τε καὶ παράλληλός ἐστὶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ  $\text{O}\text{H}$  τῇ  $\text{M}\text{A}$ , καὶ ἡ  $\text{K}\text{Z}$  ἄρα τῇ  $\text{M}\text{A}$  ἴση τε καὶ παράλληλός ἐστὶν· καὶ ἐπιζευγνύουσιν αὐτὰς εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $\text{K}\text{M}$ ,  $\text{Z}\text{A}$ · καὶ αἱ  $\text{K}\text{M}$ ,  $\text{Z}\text{A}$  ἄρα ἴσαι τε καὶ παράλληλοί εἰσιν· παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $\text{K}\text{Z}\text{A}\text{M}$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ μὲν  $\text{A}\text{B}\Delta$  τρίγωνον τῷ  $\text{Z}\text{O}$  παραλληλογράμμῳ, τὸ δὲ  $\Delta\text{B}\Gamma$  τῷ  $\text{H}\text{M}$ , ὅλον ἄρα τὸ  $\text{A}\text{B}\Gamma\Delta$  εὐθύγραμμον ὅλῳ τῷ  $\text{K}\text{Z}\text{A}\text{M}$  παραλληλογράμμῳ ἐστὶν ἴσον.

Τῷ ἄρα δοθέντι εὐθυγράμμῳ τῷ  $\text{A}\text{B}\Gamma\Delta$  ἴσον παραλληλόγραμμον συνέσταται τὸ  $\text{K}\text{Z}\text{A}\text{M}$  ἐν γωνίᾳ τῇ ὑπὸ  $\text{Z}\text{K}\text{M}$ , ἣ ἐστὶν ἴση τῇ δοθείσῃ τῇ  $\text{E}$ · ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

the parallelogram  $\text{GM}$ , equal to the triangle  $\text{DBC}$ , have been applied to the straight-line  $\text{GH}$  in the angle  $\text{GHM}$ , which is equal to  $\text{E}$  [Prop. 1.44]. And since angle  $\text{E}$  is equal to each of (angles)  $\text{HKF}$  and  $\text{GHM}$ , (angle)  $\text{HKF}$  is thus also equal to  $\text{GHM}$ . Let  $\text{KHG}$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $\text{FKH}$  and  $\text{KHG}$  is equal to (the sum of)  $\text{KHG}$  and  $\text{GHM}$ . But, (the sum of)  $\text{FKH}$  and  $\text{KHG}$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.29]. Thus, (the sum of)  $\text{KHG}$  and  $\text{GHM}$  is also equal to two right-angles. So two straight-lines,  $\text{KH}$  and  $\text{HM}$ , not lying on the same side, make the (sum of the) adjacent angles equal to two right-angles at the point  $\text{H}$  on some straight-line  $\text{GH}$ . Thus,  $\text{KH}$  is straight-on to  $\text{HM}$  [Prop. 1.14]. And since the straight-line  $\text{HG}$  falls across the parallel-lines  $\text{KM}$  and  $\text{FG}$ , the alternate angles  $\text{MHG}$  and  $\text{HGF}$  are equal to one another [Prop. 1.29]. Let  $\text{HGL}$  have been added to both. Thus, (the sum of)  $\text{MHG}$  and  $\text{HGL}$  is equal to (the sum of)  $\text{HGF}$  and  $\text{HGL}$ . But, (the sum of)  $\text{MHG}$  and  $\text{HGL}$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.29]. Thus, (the sum of)  $\text{HGF}$  and  $\text{HGL}$  is also equal to two right-angles. Thus,  $\text{FG}$  is straight-on to  $\text{GL}$  [Prop. 1.14]. And since  $\text{FK}$  is equal and parallel to  $\text{HG}$  [Prop. 1.34], but also  $\text{HG}$  to  $\text{ML}$  [Prop. 1.34],  $\text{KF}$  is thus also equal and parallel to  $\text{ML}$  [Prop. 1.30]. And the straight-lines  $\text{KM}$  and  $\text{FL}$  join them. Thus,  $\text{KM}$  and  $\text{FL}$  are equal and parallel as well [Prop. 1.33]. Thus,  $\text{KFLM}$  is a parallelogram. And since triangle  $\text{ABD}$  is equal to parallelogram  $\text{FH}$ , and  $\text{DBC}$  to  $\text{GM}$ , the whole rectilinear figure  $\text{ABCD}$  is thus equal to the whole parallelogram  $\text{KFLM}$ .

Thus, the parallelogram  $\text{KFLM}$ , equal to the given rectilinear figure  $\text{ABCD}$ , has been constructed in the angle  $\text{FKM}$ , which is equal to the given (angle)  $\text{E}$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

† The proof is only given for a four-sided figure. However, the extension to many-sided figures is trivial.

### μζ'.

Ἀπὸ τῆς δοθείσης εὐθείας τετράγωνον ἀναγράψαι.

Ἐστω ἡ δοθεῖσα εὐθεῖα ἡ  $\text{AB}$ · δεῖ δὴ ἀπὸ τῆς  $\text{AB}$  εὐθείας τετράγωνον ἀναγράψαι.

Ἦχθω τῇ  $\text{AB}$  εὐθεῖᾳ ἀπὸ τοῦ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείου τοῦ  $\text{A}$  πρὸς ὀρθὰς ἡ  $\text{AG}$ , καὶ κείσθω τῇ  $\text{AB}$  ἴση ἡ  $\text{AD}$ · καὶ διὰ μὲν τοῦ  $\Delta$  σημείου τῇ  $\text{AB}$  παράλληλος ἤχθω ἡ  $\text{DE}$ , διὰ δὲ τοῦ  $\text{B}$  σημείου τῇ  $\text{AD}$  παράλληλος ἤχθω ἡ  $\text{BE}$ . παραλληλόγραμμον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $\text{A}\text{D}\text{E}\text{B}$ · ἴση ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν  $\text{AB}$  τῇ  $\text{DE}$ , ἡ δὲ  $\text{AD}$  τῇ  $\text{BE}$ . ἀλλὰ ἡ  $\text{AB}$  τῇ  $\text{AD}$  ἐστὶν ἴση· αἱ τέσσαρες ἄρα αἱ  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{AD}$ ,  $\text{DE}$ ,  $\text{EB}$  ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν· ἰσόπλευρον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $\text{A}\text{D}\text{E}\text{B}$  παραλληλόγραμμον. λέγω δὴ, ὅτι καὶ ὀρθογώνιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ εἰς παραλλήλους τὰς  $\text{AB}$ ,  $\text{DE}$  εὐθεῖα ἐνέπεσεν ἡ  $\text{AD}$ ,

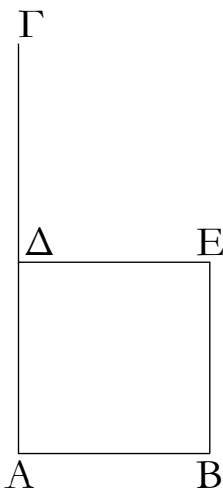
### Proposition 46

To describe a square on a given straight-line.

Let  $\text{AB}$  be the given straight-line. So it is required to describe a square on the straight-line  $\text{AB}$ .

Let  $\text{AC}$  have been drawn at right-angles to the straight-line  $\text{AB}$  from the point  $\text{A}$  on it [Prop. 1.11], and let  $\text{AD}$  have been made equal to  $\text{AB}$  [Prop. 1.3]. And let  $\text{DE}$  have been drawn through point  $\text{D}$  parallel to  $\text{AB}$  [Prop. 1.31], and let  $\text{BE}$  have been drawn through point  $\text{B}$  parallel to  $\text{AD}$  [Prop. 1.31]. Thus,  $\text{ADEB}$  is a parallelogram. Thus,  $\text{AB}$  is equal to  $\text{DE}$ , and  $\text{AD}$  to  $\text{BE}$  [Prop. 1.34]. But,  $\text{AB}$  is equal to  $\text{AD}$ . Thus, the four (sides)  $\text{BA}$ ,  $\text{AD}$ ,  $\text{DE}$ , and  $\text{EB}$  are equal to one another. Thus, the parallelogram  $\text{ADEB}$  is equilateral. So

αἱ ἄρα ὑπὸ  $BA\Delta$ ,  $A\Delta E$  γωνίαι δύο ὀρθαῖς ἴσαι εἰσίν. ὀρθὴ δὲ ἡ ὑπὸ  $BA\Delta$ : ὀρθὴ ἄρα καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ  $A\Delta E$ . τῶν δὲ παραλληλογράμμων χωρίων αἱ ἀπεναντίον πλευραὶ τε καὶ γωνίαι ἴσαι ἀλλήλαις εἰσίν: ὀρθὴ ἄρα καὶ ἑκατέρω τῶν ἀπεναντίον τῶν ὑπὸ  $ABE$ ,  $BE\Delta$  γωνιῶν: ὀρθογώνιον ἄρα ἐστὶ τὸ  $A\Delta EB$ . ἐδείχθη δὲ καὶ ἰσόπλευρον.



Τετράγωνον ἄρα ἐστίν: καὶ ἐστὶν ἀπὸ τῆς  $AB$  εὐθείας ἀναγεγραμμένον: ὅπερ ἔδει ποιῆσαι.

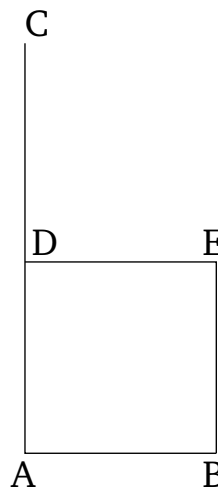
μζ'.

Ἐν τοῖς ὀρθογωνίοις τριγώνοις τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς τὴν ὀρθὴν γωνίαν ὑποτείνουσας πλευρᾶς τετράγωνον ἴσον ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν τὴν ὀρθὴν γωνίαν περιεχουσῶν πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις.

Ἐστω τρίγωνον ὀρθογώνιον τὸ  $AB\Gamma$  ὀρθὴν ἔχον τὴν ὑπὸ  $BAG$  γωνίαν: λέγω, ὅτι τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς  $B\Gamma$  τετράγωνον ἴσον ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν  $BA$ ,  $AG$  τετραγώνοις.

Ἀναγεγράφθω γὰρ ἀπὸ μὲν τῆς  $B\Gamma$  τετράγωνον τὸ  $B\Delta E\Gamma$ , ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν  $BA$ ,  $AG$  τὰ  $HB$ ,  $\Theta\Gamma$ , καὶ διὰ τοῦ  $A$  ὁποτέρω τῶν  $B\Delta$ ,  $\Gamma E$  παράλληλος ἦχθω ἡ  $AL$ : καὶ ἐπεζεύχθωσαν αἱ  $A\Delta$ ,  $Z\Gamma$ . καὶ ἐπεὶ ὀρθὴ ἐστὶν ἑκατέρω τῶν ὑπὸ  $BAG$ ,  $BAH$  γωνιῶν, πρὸς δὴ τινὶ εὐθείᾳ τῇ  $BA$  καὶ τῷ πρὸς αὐτῇ σημείῳ τῷ  $A$  δύο εὐθεῖαι αἱ  $AG$ ,  $AH$  μὴ ἐπὶ τὰ αὐτὰ μέρη κείμεναι τὰς ἐφεξῆς γωνίας δυσὶν ὀρθαῖς ἴσας ποιοῦσιν: ἐπ' εὐθείας ἄρα ἐστὶν ἡ  $GA$  τῇ  $AH$ . διὰ τὰ αὐτὰ δὴ καὶ ἡ  $BA$  τῇ  $A\Theta$  ἐστὶν ἐπ' εὐθείας, καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta B\Gamma$  γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ  $ZBA$ : ὀρθὴ γὰρ ἑκατέρω: κοινὴ προσκείσθω ἡ ὑπὸ  $AB\Gamma$ : ὅλη ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ  $\Delta BA$  ὅλη τῇ ὑπὸ  $ZB\Gamma$  ἐστὶν ἴση, καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ μὲν  $\Delta B$  τῇ  $B\Gamma$ , ἡ δὲ  $ZB$  τῇ  $BA$ , δύο δὴ αἱ  $\Delta B$ ,  $BA$  δύο ταῖς  $ZB$ ,  $B\Gamma$  ἴσαι εἰσὶν ἑκατέρω ἑκατέρω: καὶ γωνία

I say that (it is) also right-angled. For since the straight-line  $AD$  falls across the parallel-lines  $AB$  and  $DE$ , the (sum of the) angles  $BAD$  and  $ADE$  is equal to two right-angles [Prop. 1.29]. But  $BAD$  (is a) right-angle. Thus,  $ADE$  (is) also a right-angle. And for parallelogrammic figures, the opposite sides and angles are equal to one another [Prop. 1.34]. Thus, each of the opposite angles  $ABE$  and  $BED$  (are) also right-angles. Thus,  $ADEB$  is right-angled. And it was also shown (to be) equilateral.



Thus,  $(ADEB)$  is a square [Def. 1.22]. And it is described on the straight-line  $AB$ . (Which is) the very thing it was required to do.

### Proposition 47

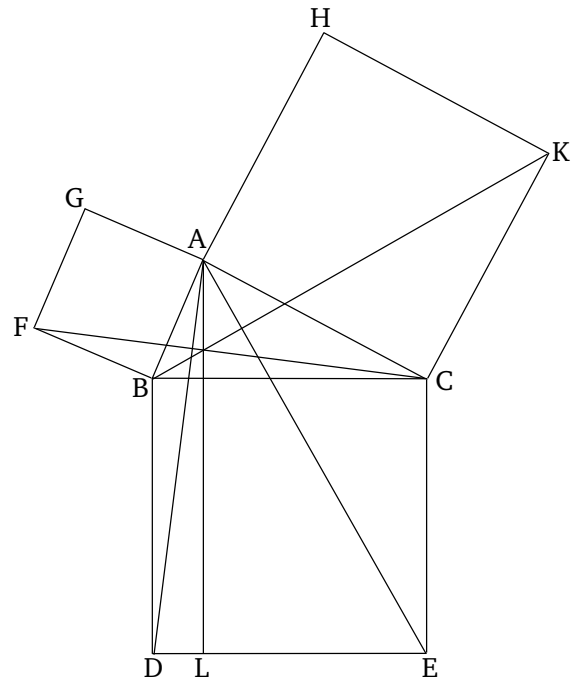
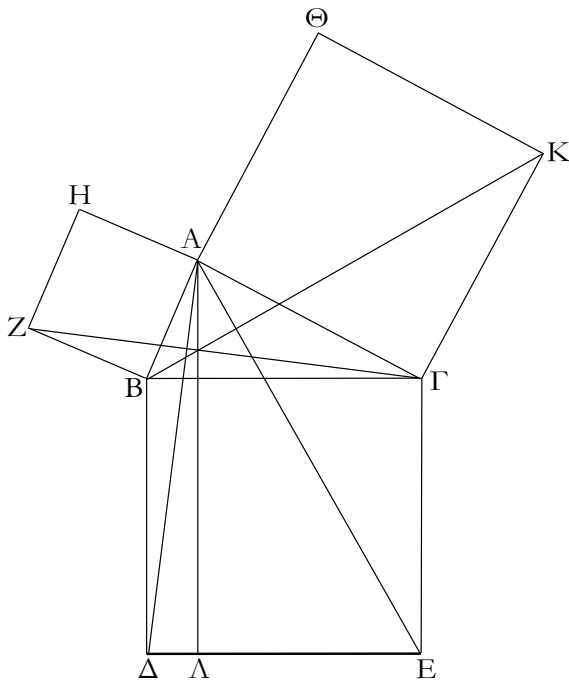
In a right-angled triangle, the square on the side subtending the right-angle is equal to the (sum of the) squares on the sides surrounding the right-angle.

Let  $ABC$  be a right-angled triangle having the right-angle  $BAC$ . I say that the square on  $BC$  is equal to the (sum of the) squares on  $BA$  and  $AC$ .

For let the square  $BDEC$  have been described on  $BC$ , and (the squares)  $GB$  and  $HC$  on  $AB$  and  $AC$  (respectively) [Prop. 1.46]. And let  $AL$  have been drawn through point  $A$  parallel to either of  $BD$  or  $CE$  [Prop. 1.31]. And let  $AD$  and  $FC$  have been joined. And since angles  $BAC$  and  $BAG$  are each right-angles, then two straight-lines  $AC$  and  $AG$ , not lying on the same side, make the (sum of the) adjacent angles equal to two right-angles at the same point  $A$  on some straight-line  $BA$ . Thus,  $CA$  is straight-on to  $AG$  [Prop. 1.14]. So, for the same (reasons),  $BA$  is also straight-on to  $AH$ . And since angle  $DBC$  is equal to  $FBA$ , for (they are) both right-angles, let  $ABC$  have been added to both. Thus, the whole (angle)  $DBA$  is equal to the whole (angle)  $FBC$ . And since  $DB$  is equal to  $BC$ , and  $FB$  to  $BA$ ,

ἡ ὑπὸ ΔΒΑ γωνία τῇ ὑπὸ ΖΒΓ ἴση· βάσις ἄρα ἡ ΑΔ  
 βάσει τῇ ΖΓ [ἐστίν] ἴση, καὶ τὸ ΑΒΔ τρίγωνον τῷ ΖΒΓ  
 τριγώνῳ ἐστὶν ἴσον· καὶ [ἐστὶ] τοῦ μὲν ΑΒΔ τριγώνου  
 διπλάσιον τὸ ΒΛ παραλληλόγραμμον· βάσιν τε γὰρ τὴν  
 αὐτὴν ἔχουσι τὴν ΒΔ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς εἰσι παραλλήλοις  
 ταῖς ΒΔ, ΑΛ· τοῦ δὲ ΖΒΓ τριγώνου διπλάσιον τὸ ΗΒ  
 τετράγωνον· βάσιν τε γὰρ πάλιν τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχουσι τὴν  
 ΖΒ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς εἰσι παραλλήλοις ταῖς ΖΒ, ΗΓ.  
 [τὰ δὲ τῶν ἴσων διπλάσια ἴσα ἀλλήλοις ἐστίν] ἴσον ἄρα  
 ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ ΒΛ παραλληλόγραμμον τῷ ΗΒ τετραγώνῳ.  
 ὁμοίως δὲ ἐπιζευγνυμένων τῶν ΑΕ, ΒΚ δειχθήσεται  
 καὶ τὸ ΓΛ παραλληλόγραμμον ἴσον τῷ ΘΓ τετραγώνῳ·  
 ὅλον ἄρα τὸ ΒΔΕΓ τετράγωνον δυσὶ τοῖς ΗΒ, ΘΓ τε-  
 τραγώνοις ἴσον ἐστίν. καὶ ἐστὶ τὸ μὲν ΒΔΕΓ τετράγωνον  
 ἀπὸ τῆς ΒΓ ἀναγραφέν, τὰ δὲ ΗΒ, ΘΓ ἀπὸ τῶν ΒΑ,  
 ΑΓ. τὸ ἄρα ἀπὸ τῆς ΒΓ πλευρᾶς τετράγωνον ἴσον ἐστὶ  
 τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ΒΑ, ΑΓ πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις.

the two (straight-lines)  $DB, BA$  are equal to the two  
 (straight-lines)  $CB, BF$ ,<sup>†</sup> respectively. And angle  $DBA$   
 (is) equal to angle  $FBC$ . Thus, the base  $AD$  [is] equal  
 to the base  $FC$ , and the triangle  $ABD$  is equal to the  
 triangle  $FBC$  [Prop. 1.4]. And parallelogram  $BL$  [is]  
 double (the area) of triangle  $ABD$ . For they have the  
 same base,  $BD$ , and are between the same parallels,  $BD$   
 and  $AL$  [Prop. 1.41]. And parallelogram  $GB$  is double  
 (the area) of triangle  $FBC$ . For again they have the  
 same base,  $FB$ , and are between the same parallels,  $FB$   
 and  $GC$  [Prop. 1.41]. [And the doubles of equal things  
 are equal to one another.]<sup>‡</sup> Thus, the parallelogram  $BL$   
 is also equal to the square  $GB$ . So, similarly,  $AE$  and  
 $BK$  being joined, the parallelogram  $CL$  can be shown  
 (to be) equal to the square  $HC$ . Thus, the whole square  
 $BDEC$  is equal to the (sum of the) two squares  $GB$  and  
 $HC$ . And the square  $BDEC$  is described on  $BC$ , and  
 the (squares)  $GB$  and  $HC$  on  $BA$  and  $AC$  (respectively).  
 Thus, the square on the side  $BC$  is equal to the (sum of  
 the) squares on the sides  $BA$  and  $AC$ .



Ἐν ἄρα τοῖς ὀρθογωνίοις τριγώνοις τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς  
 τὴν ὀρθὴν γωνίαν ὑποτείνουσας πλευρᾶς τετράγωνον  
 ἴσον ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν τὴν ὀρθὴν [γωνίαν] περιεχουσῶν  
 πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις· ὅπερ ἔδει δεῖξαι.

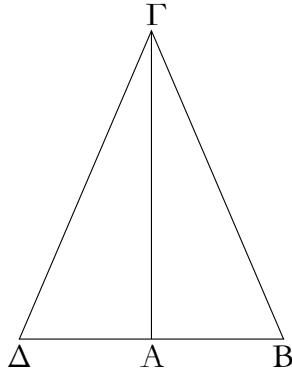
Thus, in a right-angled triangle, the square on the  
 side subtending the right-angle is equal to the (sum of  
 the) squares on the sides surrounding the right-[angle].  
 (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

<sup>†</sup> The Greek text has " $FB, BC$ ", which is obviously a mistake.

<sup>‡</sup> This is an additional common notion.

μη'.

Ἐάν τριγώνου τὸ ἀπὸ μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν τετράγωνον ἴσον ᾗ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις, ἡ περιεχομένη γωνία ὑπὸ τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν ὀρθή ἐστίν.



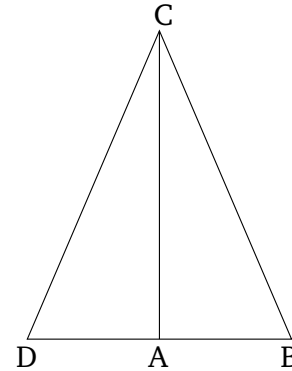
Τριγώνου γὰρ τοῦ ABΓ τὸ ἀπὸ μιᾶς τῆς BΓ πλευρᾶς τετράγωνον ἴσον ἔστω τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν BA, AΓ πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις· λέγω, ὅτι ὀρθή ἐστίν ἡ ὑπὸ BAΓ γωνία.

Ἦχθω γὰρ ἀπὸ τοῦ A σημείου τῆς AΓ εὐθείας πρὸς ὀρθᾶς ἡ AΔ καὶ κείσθω τῆς BA ἴση ἡ AΔ, καὶ ἐπεζεύχθω ἡ ΔΓ. ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΔA τῆς AB, ἴσον ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς ΔA τετράγωνον τῷ ἀπὸ τῆς AB τετραγώνῳ. κοινὸν προσκείσθω τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς AΓ τετράγωνον· τὰ ἄρα ἀπὸ τῶν ΔA, AΓ τετράγωνα ἴσα ἐστὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν BA, AΓ τετραγώνοις. ἀλλὰ τοῖς μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ΔA, AΓ ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς ΔΓ· ὀρθή γὰρ ἐστίν ἡ ὑπὸ ΔAΓ γωνία· τοῖς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν BA, AΓ ἴσον ἐστὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς BΓ· ὑπόκειται γὰρ· τὸ ἄρα ἀπὸ τῆς ΔΓ τετράγωνον ἴσον ἐστὶ τῷ ἀπὸ τῆς BΓ τετραγώνῳ· ὥστε καὶ πλευρὰ ἡ ΔΓ τῆς BΓ ἐστὶν ἴση· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἴση ἐστὶν ἡ ΔA τῆς AB, κοινὴ δὲ ἡ AΓ, δύο δὴ αἱ ΔA, AΓ δύο ταῖς BA, AΓ ἴσαι εἰσὶν καὶ βάσεις ἡ ΔΓ βάσει τῆς BΓ ἴση· γωνία ἄρα ἡ ὑπὸ ΔAΓ γωνία τῆς ὑπὸ BAΓ [ἐστίν] ἴση. ὀρθή δὲ ἡ ὑπὸ ΔAΓ· ὀρθή ἄρα καὶ ἡ ὑπὸ BAΓ.

Ἐάν ἄρα τριγώνου τὸ ἀπὸ μιᾶς τῶν πλευρῶν τετράγωνον ἴσον ᾗ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν τετραγώνοις, ἡ περιεχομένη γωνία ὑπὸ τῶν λοιπῶν τοῦ τριγώνου δύο πλευρῶν ὀρθή ἐστίν· ὅπερ εἶδει δεῖξαι.

## Proposition 48

If the square on one of the sides of a triangle is equal to the (sum of the) squares on the remaining sides of the triangle then the angle contained by the remaining sides of the triangle is a right-angle.



For let the square on one of the sides,  $BC$ , of triangle  $ABC$  be equal to the (sum of the) squares on the sides  $BA$  and  $AC$ . I say that angle  $BAC$  is a right-angle.

For let  $AD$  have been drawn from point  $A$  at right-angles to the straight-line  $BC$  [Prop. 1.11], and let  $AD$  have been made equal to  $BA$  [Prop. 1.3], and let  $DC$  have been joined. Since  $DA$  is equal to  $AB$ , the square on  $DA$  is thus also equal to the square on  $AB$ .<sup>†</sup> Let the square on  $AC$  have been added to both. Thus, the (sum of the) squares on  $DA$  and  $AC$  is equal to the (sum of the) squares on  $BA$  and  $AC$ . But, the (sum of the squares) on  $DA$  and  $AC$  is equal to the (square) on  $DC$ . For angle  $DAC$  is a right-angle [Prop. 1.47]. But, the (sum of the squares) on  $BA$  and  $AC$  is equal to the (square) on  $BC$ . For (that) was assumed. Thus, the square on  $DC$  is equal to the square on  $BC$ . So  $DC$  is also equal to  $BC$ . And since  $DA$  is equal to  $AB$ , and  $AC$  (is) common, the two (straight-lines)  $DA$ ,  $AC$  are equal to the two (straight-lines)  $BA$ ,  $AC$ . And the base  $DC$  is equal to the base  $BC$ . Thus, angle  $DAC$  [is] equal to angle  $BAC$  [Prop. 1.8]. But  $DAC$  is a right-angle. Thus,  $BAC$  is also a right-angle.

Thus, if the square on one of the sides of a triangle is equal to the (sum of the) squares on the remaining sides of the triangle then the angle contained by the remaining sides of the triangle is a right-angle. (Which is) the very thing it was required to show.

<sup>†</sup> Here, use is made of the additional common notion that the squares of equal things are themselves equal. Later on, the inverse notion is used.

# GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON

ABBREVIATIONS: *act* - active; *adj* - adjective; *adv* - adverb; *conj* - conjunction; *fut* - future; *gen* - genitive; *imperat* - imperative; *impf* - imperfect; *ind* - indeclinable; *indic* - indicative; *intr* - intransitive; *mid* - middle; *neut* - neuter; *no* - noun; *par* - particle; *part* - participle; *pass* - passive; *perf* - perfect; *pre* - preposition; *pres* - present; *pro* - pronoun; *sg* - singular; *tr* - transitive; *vb* - verb.

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, -ῆχα, ἤγμαι, ἤχθην : *vb*, lead, draw (a line).

ἄδύνατος -ον : *adj*, impossible.

ἀεί : *adv*, always, for ever.

αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, εἶλον, ἤρηκα, ἤρημαι, ἠρέθην : *vb*, grasp.

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἤτησα, ἤτηκα, ἤτημαι, ἠτήθη : *vb*, postulate.

αἵτημα -ατος, τό : *no*, postulate.

ἁκόλουθος -ον : *adj*, analogous, consequent on, in conformity with.

ἄκρος -α -ον : *adj*, outermost, end, extreme.

ἄλλά : *conj*, but, otherwise.

ἄλογος -ον : *adj*, irrational.

ἅμα : *adv*, at once, at the same time, together.

ἄμβλυγώνιος -ον : *adj*, obtuse-angled; τὸ ἄμβλυγώνιον, *no*, obtuse angle.

ἄμβλύς -εῖα -ύ : *adj*, obtuse.

ἄμφοτερος -α -ον : *pro*, both (of two).

ἀναγράφω : *vb*, describe (a figure); see γράφω.

ἀναλογία, ἡ : *no*, proportion, (geometric) progression.

ἀνάλογος -ον : *adj*, proportional.

ἀνάπαλιν : *adv*, inverse(ly).

αναπληρόω : *vb*, fill up.

ἀναστρέφω : *vb*, turn upside down, convert (ratio); see στρέφω.

ἀναστροφή, ἡ : *no*, turning upside down, conversion (of ratio).

ἀνθυφαιρέω : *vb*, take away in turn; see αἰρέω.

ἀνίστημι : *vb*, set up; see ἵστημι.

ἄνιστος -ον : *adj*, unequal, uneven.

ἀντιπάσχω : *vb*, be reciprocally proportional; see πάσχω.

ἄξων -ονος, ὁ : *vb*, axis.

ἅπαξ : *adv*, once.

ἅπασα, ἅπασα, ἅπαν : *adj*, quite all, the whole.

ἄπειρος -ον : *adj*, infinite.

ἄπεναντίον : *ind*, opposite.

ἀπέχω : *vb*, be far from, be away from; see ἔχω.

ἄπλάτης -ές : *adj*, without breadth.

ἀπόδειξις -εως, ἡ : *no*, proof.

ἀποκαθίστημι : *vb*, re-establish, restore; see ἵστημι.

ἀπολαμβάνω : *vb*, take from, subtract from, cut off from; see λαμβάνω.

ἀπότμημα -ατος, τὸ : *no*, piece cut off, segment.

ἀποτομή, ἡ : *vb*, piece cut off, apotome.

ἄπτω, ἄψω, ἤψα, —, ἤμμαι, — : *vb*, touch, join, meet.

ἄπώτερος -α -ον : *adj*, further off.

ἄρα : *par*, thus, as it seems (inferential).

ἀριθμός, ὁ : *no*, number.

ἄρτιάκις : *adv*, an even number of times.

ἄρτιόπλευρος -ον : *adj*, having a even number of sides.

ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἤρξα, ἤρχα, ἤρχμαι, ἤρχθην : *vb*, rule; *mid.*, begin.

ἄσύμμετρος -ον : *adj*, incommensurable.

ἄσύμπτωτος -ον : *adj*, not touching, not meeting.

ἄρτιος -α -ον : *adj*, even, perfect.

ἄτμητος -ον : *adj*, uncut.

ἄτόπος -ον : *adj*, absurd, paradoxical.

αὐτόθεν : *adv*, immediately, obviously.

ἄφαίρω : *vb*, take from, subtract from, cut off from; see αἰρέω.

ἄφή, ἡ : *no*, point of contact.

βάθος -εος, τό : *no*, depth, height.

βαίνω, -βήσομαι, -έβην, βέβηκα, —, — : *vb*, walk; *perf*, stand (of angle).

βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην : *vb*, throw.

βάσις -εως, ἡ : *no*, base (of a triangle).

γάρ : *conj*, for (explanatory).

γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα, γεγένημαι, — : *vb*, happen, become.

γνώμων -ονος, ἡ : *no*, gnomon.

γραμμή, ἡ : *no*, line.

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψ[ψ]α, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐραψάμην : *vb*, draw (a figure).

γωνία, ἡ : *no*, angle.

δεῖ : *vb*, be necessary; δεῖ, it is necessary; ἔδει, it was necessary; δέον, being necessary.

δείκνυμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην : *vb*, show, demonstrate.

δεικτέον : *ind*, one must show.

δείξις -εως, ἡ : *no*, proof.

δείχνυμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην : *vb*, show, demonstrate.

δεκαγώνος -ον : *adj*, ten-sided; τὸ δεκαγώνον, *no*, decagon.

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, —, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην : *vb*, receive, accept.

δή : *conj*, so (explanatory).

δηλαδῆ : *ind*, quite clear, manifest.

δῆλος -η -ον : *adj*, clear.

δηλονότι : *adv*, manifestly.

διάγω : *vb*, carry over, draw through, draw across; see ἄγω.

διαγώνιος -ον : *adj*, diagonal.



- διαλείπω : *vb*, leave an interval between.
- διάμετρος -ον : *adj*, diametrical; ἡ διάμετρος, *no*, diameter, diagonal.
- διαίρεσις -εως, ἡ : *no*, division, separation.
- διαιρέω : *vb*, divide (in two); διαρεθέντος -η -ον, *adj*, separated (ratio); see αἰρέω.
- διάστημα -ατος, τό : *no*, radius.
- διαφέρω : *vb*, differ; see φέρω.
- δίωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδοκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθη : *vb*, give.
- διμοῖρος -ον : *adj*, two-thirds.
- διπλασιάζω : *vb*, double.
- διπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, double, twofold.
- διπλασίων -ον : *adj*, double, twofold.
- διπλοῦς -ῆ -οῦν : *adj*, double.
- δίς : *adv*, twice.
- δίχα : *adv*, in two, in half.
- διχορομία, ἡ : *no*, point of bisection.
- δυάς -άδος, ἡ : *no*, the number two, dyad.
- δύναμαι : *vb*, be able, be capable, generate, square, be when squared; δυναμένη, ἡ, *no*, square-root (of area)—i.e., straight-line whose square is equal to a given area.
- δύναμις -εως, ἡ : *no*, power (usually 2nd power when used in mathematical sense, hence), square.
- δυνατός -ή -όν : *adj*, possible.
- δωδεκάεδρος -ον : *adj*, twelve-sided.
- ἐαυτοῦ -ῆς -οῦ : *adj*, of him/her/it/self, his/her/its/own.
- ἐγγίων -ον : *adj*, nearer, nearest.
- ἐγγράφω : *vb*, inscribe; see γράφω.
- εἶδος -εος, τό : *no*, figure, form, shape.
- εἰκοσάεδρος -ον : *adj*, twenty-sided.
- εἶρω/λέγω, ἐρῶ/ερέω, εἶπον, εἶρηκα, εἶρημαι, ἐρρήθη : *vb*, say, speak; *per pass part*, ειρημένος -η -ον, *adj*, said, aforementioned.
- εἴτε ... εἴτε : *ind*, either ... or.
- ἕκαστος -η -ον : *pro*, each, every one.
- ἐκατέρως -α -ον : *pro*, each (of two).
- ἐκβάλλω, ἐκβαλῶ, ἐκέβαλον, ἐκβέβιωκα, ἐκβέβλημαι, ἐκβληθήν : *vb*, produce (a line).
- ἐκθέω : *vb*, set out.
- ἐκκίμαι : *vb*, be set out, be taken; see κείμαι.
- ἐκτίθημι : *vb*, set out; see τίθημι.
- ἐκτός : *pre + gen*, outside, external.
- ἐλά[σση/ττων]ων -ον : *adj*, less, lesser.
- ἐλλείπω : *vb*, be less than, fall short of.
- ἐπίπτω : *vb*, meet (of lines), fall on; see πίπτω.
- ἔμπροσθεν : *adv*, in front.
- ἐναλλάξ : *adv*, alternate(ly).
- ἐναρμόζω : *vb*, insert; *perf indic pass 3rd sg*, ἐνήρμοσται.
- ἐνδέχομαι : *vb*, admit, allow.
- ἐνεκεν : *ind*, on account of, for the sake of.
- ἐνναπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, nine-fold, nine-times.
- ἐνοια, ἡ : *no*, notion.
- ενπεριέχω : *vb*, encompass.
- ἐνπίπτω : see ἐπίπτω.
- ἐντός : *pre + gen*, inside, interior, within, internal.
- ἐξάγωνος -ον : *adj*, hexagonal; τὸ ἐξάγωνον, *no*, hexagon.
- ἐξαπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, sixfold.
- ἐξῆς : *adv*, in order, successively, consecutively.
- ἔξωθεν : *adv*, outside, extrinsic.
- ἐπάνω : *adv*, above.
- ἐπαφή, ἡ : *no*, point of contact.
- ἐπεί : *conj*, since (causal).
- ἐπειδήπερ : *ind*, inasmuch as, seeing that.
- ἐπιζεύγνυμι, ἐπιζεύζω, ἐπέζευξα, —, ἐπέζευγμαί, ἐπέζεύχθη : *vb*, join (by a line).
- ἐπιλογίζομαι : *vb*, conclude.
- ἐπινοέω : *vb*, think of, contrive.
- ἐπιπέδος -ον : *adj*, level, flat, plane; τὸ ἐπιπέδον, *no*, plane.
- ἐπισκέπτομαι : *vb*, investigate.
- ἐπίσκεψις -εως, ἡ : *no*, inspection, investigation.
- ἐπιτάσσω : *vb*, put upon, enjoin; τὸ ἐπιταχθέν, *no*, the (thing) prescribed; see τάσσω.
- ἐπίτριτος -ον : *adj*, one and a third times.
- ἐπιφάνεια, ἡ : *no*, surface.
- ἔπομαι : *vb*, follow.
- ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα, —, — : *vb*, come, go.
- ἔσχατος -η -ον : *adj*, outermost, uttermost, last.
- ἑτερόμηκης -ες : *adj*, oblong; τὸ ἑτερόμηκες, *no*, rectangle.
- ἕτερος -α -ον : *adj*, other (of two).
- ἔτι : *par*, yet, still, besides.
- εὐθύγραμμος -ον : *adj*, rectilinear; τὸ εὐθύγραμμον, *no*, rectilinear figure.
- εὐθύς -εῖα -ύ : *adj*, straight; ἡ εὐθεῖα, *no*, straight-line; ἐπ' εὐθεῖας, in a straight-line, straight-on.
- εὐρίσκω, εὐρήσκω, ηὔρον, εὔρηκα, εὔρημαι, εὐρέθη : *vb*, find.
- ἐφάπτω : *vb*, bind to; *mid*, touch; ἡ ἐφαπτομένη, *no*, tangent; see ἄπτω.
- ἐφαρμόζω, ἐφαρμόσω, ἐφήρμοσα, ἐφήμοικα, ἐφήμοσμαι, ἐφήμόσθη : *vb*, coincide; *pass*, be applied.
- ἐφεξῆς : *adv*, in order, adjacent.
- ἐφίστημι : *vb*, set, stand, place upon; see ἵστημι.
- ἔχω, ἔξω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα, -έσχημαι, — : *vb*, have.
- ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἡγημαι, —, ἡγήθη : *vb*, lead.

- ἤδη : *ind*, already, now.
- ἦκω, ἦξω, —, —, —, — : *vb*, have come, be present.
- ἡμικύκλιον, τό : *no*, semi-circle.
- ἡμιόλιος -α -ον : *adj*, containing one and a half, one and a half times.
- ἡμισυς -εια -υ : *adj*, half.
- ἦπερ = ἦ + περ : *conj*, than, than indeed.
- ἦτοι ... ἦ : *par*, surely, either ... or; in fact, either ... or.
- ἑίσις -εως, ἦ : *no*, placing, setting, position.
- ἑωρημα -ατος, τό : *no*, theorem.
- ἴδιος -α -ον : *adj*, one's own.
- ἰσάκις : *adv*, the same number of times; ἰσάκις πολλαπλάσια, the same multiples, equal multiples.
- ἰσογώνιος -ον : *adj*, equiangular.
- ἰσόπλευρος -ον : *adj*, equilateral.
- ἰσοπληθής -ές : *adj*, equal in number.
- ἴσος -η -ον : *adj*, equal; ἐξ ἴσου, equally, evenly.
- ἰσοσκελής -ές : *adj*, isosceles.
- ἴστημι, στήσω, ἕστησα, —, —, ἑσταθην : *vb tr*, stand (something).
- ἴστημι, στήσω, ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, ἑσταθην : *vb intr*, stand up (oneself); Note: perfect *I have stood up* can be taken to mean present *I am standing*.
- ἰσοῦψής -ές : *adj*, of equal height.
- καθάπερ : *ind*, according as, just as.
- κάθετος -ον : *adj*, perpendicular.
- καθόλου : *adv*, on the whole, in general.
- καλέω : *vb*, call.
- κακκεινος = καὶ ἐκεινος .
- καὶν = καὶ ἄν : *ind*, even if, and if.
- καταγραφή, ἦ : *no*, diagram, figure.
- καταγράφω : *vb*, describe/draw, inscribe (a figure); see γράφω.
- κατακολουθέω : *vb*, follow after.
- καταλείπω : *vb*, leave behind; see λείπω; τὰ καταλειπόμενα, *no*, remainder.
- κατάλληλος -ον : *adj*, in succession, in corresponding order.
- καταμετρέω : *vb*, measure (exactly).
- καταντάω : *vb*, come to, arrive at.
- κατασκευάζω : *vb*, furnish, construct.
- κειῖμαι, κειῖσθαι, —, —, —, — : *vb*, have been placed, lie, be made; see τίθημι.
- κέντρον, τό : *no*, center.
- κλάω : *vb*, break off, inflect.
- κλίνω, κλίνω, ἔκλινα, κέκλικα, κέκλιμαι, ἐκλίθην : *vb*, lean, incline.
- κλίσις -εως, ἦ : *no*, inclination, bending.
- κοῖλος -η -ον : *adj*, hollow, concave.
- κορυφή, ἦ : *no*, top, summit, apex; κατὰ κορυφήν, vertically opposite (of angles).
- κρίνω, κρίνω, ἔκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην : *vb*, judge.
- κύβος, ό : *no*, cube.
- κύκλος, ό : *no*, circle.
- κύλινδρος, ό : *no*, cylinder.
- κυρτός -ή -όν : *adj*, convex.
- κῶνος, ό : *no*, cone.
- λαμβάνω, λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην : *vb*, take.
- λέγω : *vb*, say; *pres pass part*, λεγόμενος -η -ον, *no*, so-called; see ἔιρω.
- λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην : *vb*, leave, leave behind.
- λημμάτιον, τό : *no*, diminutive of λῆμμα.
- λήμμα -ατος, τό : *no*, lemma.
- λήψις -εως, ἦ : *no*, taking, catching.
- λόγος, ό : *no*, ratio, proportion, argument.
- λοιπός -ή -όν : *adj*, remaining.
- μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα, —, — : *vb*, learn.
- μέγεθος -εως, τό : *no*, magnitude, size.
- μεῖζων -ον : *adj*, greater.
- μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα, —, — : *vb*, stay, remain.
- μέρος -ους, τό : *no*, part, direction, side.
- μέσος -η -ον : *adj*, middle, mean, medial; ἐκ δύο μέσων, bi-medial.
- μεταλαμβάνω : *vb*, take up.
- μεταξύ : *adv*, between.
- μετέωρος -ον : *adj*, raised off the ground.
- μετρέω : *vb*, measure.
- μέτρον, τό : *no*, measure.
- μηδεῖς, μηδεμία, μηδέν : *adj*, not even one, (neut.) nothing.
- μηδέποτε : *adv*, never.
- μηδέτερος -α -ον : *pro*, neither (of two).
- μῆκος -εως, τό : *no*, length.
- μῆν : *par*, truly, indeed.
- μονάς -άδος, ἦ : *no*, unit, unity.
- μοναχός -ή -όν : *adj*, unique.
- μοναχῶς : *adv*, uniquely.
- μόνος -η -ον : *adj*, alone.
- νοέω, —, νόησα, νενόηκα, νενόημαι, ἐνόηθην : *vb*, apprehend, conceive.
- οἶος -α -ον : *pre*, such as, of what sort.
- ὀκτάεδρος -ον : *adj*, eight-sided.
- ὅλος -η -ον : *adj*, whole.
- ὁμογενής -ές : *adj*, of the same kind.
- ὅμοιος -α -ον : *adj*, similar.

- ὁμοιοπληθής -ές : *adj*, similar in number.  
ὁμοιοταγής -ές : *adj*, similarly arranged.  
ὁμοιότης -ητος, ἡ : *no* similarity.  
ὁμοίως : *adv*, similarly.  
ὁμόλογος -ον : *adj*, corresponding, homologous.  
ὁμοταγής -ές : *adj*, ranged in the same row or line.  
ὁμώνυμος -ον : *adj*, having the same name.  
ὄνομα -ατος, τό : *no*, name; ἐκ δύο ὀνομάτων, binomial.  
ὄξυγώνιος -ον : *adj*, acute-angled; τὸ ὄξυγώνιον, *no*, acute angle.  
ὄξύς -εῖα -ύ : *adj*, acute.  
ὅποιοσοῦν = ὅποῖος -α -ον + οὔν : *adj*, of whatever kind, any kind whatsoever.  
ὀπόσος -η -ον : *pro*, as many, as many as.  
ὀποσοσδηποτοῦν = ὀπόσος -η -ον + δὴ + ποτέ + οὔν : *adj*, of whatever number, any number whatsoever.  
ὀποσοσοῦν = ὀπόσος -η -ον + οὔν : *adj*, of whatever number, any number whatsoever.  
ὀπότερος -α -ον : *pro*, either (of two), which (of two).  
ὀρθογώνιον, τό : *no*, rectangle, right-angle.  
ὀρθός -ή -όν : *adj*, straight, right-angled, perpendicular; πρὸς ὀρθὰς γωνίας, at right-angles.  
ὄρος, ὄ : *no*, boundary, definition, term (of a ratio).  
ὄσαδηποτοῦν = ὄσα + δὴ + ποτέ + οὔν : *ind*, any number whatsoever.  
ὄσάκις : *ind*, as many times as, as often as.  
ὄσαπλάσιος -ον : *pro*, as many times as.  
ὄσος -η -ον : *pro*, as many as.  
ὄσπερ, ἡπερ, ὅπερ : *pro*, the very man who, the very thing which.  
ὅστις, ἡτις, ὅ τι : *pro*, anyone who, anything which.  
ὅταν : *adv*, when, whenever.  
ὅτιοῦν : *ind*, whatsoever.  
οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν : *pro*, not one, nothing.  
οὐδέτερος -α -ον : *pro*, not either.  
οὐθέτερος : see οὐδέτερος.  
οὐθέν : *ind*, nothing.  
οὔν : *adv*, therefore, in fact.  
οὕτως : *adv*, thusly, in this case.  
πάντως : *adv*, in all ways.  
παρὰ : *prep* + *acc*, parallel to.  
παραβάλλω : *vb*, apply (a figure); see βάλλω.  
παραβολή, ἡ : *no*, application.  
παράκειμαι : *vb*, lie beside, apply (a figure); see κείμαι.  
παραλλάσσω, παραλλάξω, —, παρήλλαχα, —, — : *vb*, miss, fall awry.  
παραλληλεπίπεδος, -ον : *adj*, with parallel surfaces; τὸ παραλληλεπίπεδον, *no*, parallelepiped.  
παραλληλόγραμμος -ον : *adj*, bounded by parallel lines; τὸ παραλληλόγραμμον, *no*, parallelogram.  
παράλληλος -ον : *adj*, parallel; τὸ παράλληλον, *no*, parallel, parallel-line.  
παραπλήρωμα -ατος, τό : *no*, complement (of a parallelogram).  
παρατέλυτος -ον : *adj*, penultimate.  
παρέκ : *prep* + *gen*, except.  
παραρπίπτω : *vb*, insert; see πίπτω.  
πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα, —, — : *vb*, suffer.  
πεντάγωνος -ον : *adj*, pentagonal; τὸ πεντάγωνον, *no*, pentagon.  
πενταπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, five-fold, five-times.  
πεντεκαιδεκάγωνον, τό : *no*, fifteen-sided figure.  
πεπερασμένος -η -ον : *adj*, finite, limited; see περαίνω.  
περαίνω, περανῶ, ἐπέρανα, —, πεπέρανμαι, ἐπερανάνθη : *vb*, bring to end, finish, complete; *pass*, be finite.  
πέρας -ατος, τό : *no*, end, extremity.  
περατώ, —, —, —, — : *vb*, bring to an end.  
περιγράφω : *vb*, circumscribe; see γράφω.  
περιέχω : *vb*, encompass, surround, contain, comprise; see ἔχω.  
περιλαμβάνω : *vb*, enclose; see λαμβάνω.  
περιλείπομαι : *vb*, remain over, be left over.  
περισσάκις : *adv*, an odd number of times.  
περισσός -ή -όν : *adj*, odd.  
περιφέρεια, ἡ : *no*, circumference.  
περιφέρω : *vb*, carry round; see φέρω.  
πηλικότης -ητος, ἡ : *no*, magnitude, size.  
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα, —, — : *vb*, fall.  
πλάτος -εος, τό : *no*, breadth, width.  
πλείων -ον : *adj*, more, several.  
πλευρά, ἡ : *no*, side.  
πλῆθος -εος, τὸ : *no*, great number, multitude, number.  
πλήν : *adv* & *prep* + *gen*, more than.  
ποιός -ά -όν : *adj*, of a certain nature, kind, quality, type.  
πολλαπλασιάζω : *vb*, multiply.  
πολλαπλασιασμός, ὁ : *no*, multiplication.  
πολλαπλάσιον, τό : *no*, multiple.  
πολύεδρος -ον : *adj*, polyhedral; τὸ πολύεδρον, *no*, polyhedron.  
πολύγωνος -ον : *adj*, polygonal; τὸ πολύγωνον, *no*, polygon.  
πολύπλευρος -ον : *adj*, multilateral.  
πόρισμα -ατος, τό : *no*, corollary.  
ποτέ : *ind*, at some time.

- πρῖσμα -ατος, τὸ : *no*, prism.  
 προβαίνω : *vb*, step forward, advance.  
 προδείκνυμι : *vb*, show previously; see δείκνυμι.  
 προεκτίθημι : *vb*, set forth beforehand; see τίθημι.  
 προερέω : *vb*, say beforehand; *perf pass part*, προειρημένος -η -ον, *adj*, aforementioned; see εἶρω.  
 προσαναπληρώω : *vb*, fill up, complete.  
 προσαναγράφω : *vb*, complete (tracing of); see γράφω.  
 προσαρμόζω : *vb*, fit to, attach to.  
 προσεκβάλλω : *vb*, produce (a line); see ἐκβάλλω.  
 προσευρίσκω : *vb*, find besides, find; see εὐρίσκω.  
 προσλαμβάνω : *vb*, add.  
 προκίμαι : *vb*, set before, prescribe.  
 πρόσκειμαι : *vb*, be laid on, have been added to; see κείμαι.  
 προσπίπτω : *vb*, fall on, fall toward, meet; see πίπτω.  
 προτασις -εως, ἡ : *no*, proposition.  
 προστάσσω : *vb*, prescribe, enjoin; τὸ τροσταχθέν, *no*, the thing prescribed; see τάσσω.  
 προστίθημι : *vb*, add; see τίθημι.  
 πρότερος -α -ον : *adj*, first (comparative), before, former.  
 προτίθημι : *vb*, assign; see τίθημι.  
 προχωρέω : *vb*, go/come forward, advance.  
 πρῶτος -α -ον : *adj*, first, prime.  
 πυραμῖς -ίδος, ἡ : *no*, pyramid.  
 ῥητός -ή -όν : *adj*, expressible, rational.  
 ῥομβοειδής -ές : *adj*, rhomboidal; τὸ ῥομβοειδές, *no*, rhomboid.  
 ῥόμβος, ὁ *no*, rhombus.  
 σημεῖον, τό : *no*, point.  
 σκαληνός -ή -όν : *adj*, scalene.  
 στερεός -ά -όν : *adj*, solid; τὸ στερεόν, *no*, solid, solid body.  
 στοιχεῖον, τό : *no*, element.  
 στρέφω, -στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, —, ἐσταμμαι, ἐστάφην : *vb*, turn.  
 σύγκειμαι : *vb*, lie together, be the sum of, be composed; συγκείμενος -η -ον, *adj*, composed (ratio), compounded; see κείμαι.  
 σύγκρινω : *vb*, compare; see κρίνω.  
 συμβαίνω : *vb*, come to pass, happen, follow; see βαίνω.  
 συμβάλλω : *vb*, throw together, meet; see βάλλω.  
 σύμμετρος -ον : *adj*, commensurable.  
 σύμπας -αντος, ὁ : *no*, sum, whole.  
 συμπίπτω : *vb*, meet together (of lines); see πίπτω.  
 συμπληρώω : *vb*, complete (a figure), fill in.  
 συνάγω : *vb*, conclude, infer; see ἄγω.  
 συναμφότεροι -αι -α : *adj*, both together; ὁ συναμφότερος, *no*, sum (of two things).  
 συναποδείκνυμι : *no*, demonstrate together; see δείκνυμι.  
 συναφή, ἡ : *no*, point of junction.  
 σύνδυο, οἱ, αἱ, τά : *no*, two together, in pairs.  
 συνεχής -ές : *adj*, continuous; κατὰ τὸ συνεχές, continuously.  
 σύνθεσις -εως, ἡ : *no*, putting together, composition.  
 σύνθετος -ον : *adj*, composite.  
 συ[ν]ίστημι : *vb*, construct (a figure), set up together; *perf imperat pass 3rd sg*, συνεστάτω; see ἵστημι.  
 συντίθημι : *vb*, put together, add together, compound (ratio); see τίθημι.  
 σχέσις -εως, ἡ : *no*, state, condition.  
 σχῆμα -ατος, τό : *no*, figure.  
 σφαῖρα -ας, ἡ : *no*, sphere.  
 τάξις -εως, ἡ : *no*, arrangement, order.  
 ταράσσω, ταραξῶ, —, —, τετάραγμα, ἐταράχθην : *vb*, stir, trouble, disturb; τεταραγμένος -η -ον, *adj*, disturbed, perturbed.  
 τάσσω, τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμα, ἐτάχθην : *vb*, arrange, draw up.  
 τέλειος -α -ον : *adj*, perfect.  
 τέμνω, τεμνῶ, ἔτεμον, -τέμνηκα, τέμνημαι, ἐτέμην : *vb*, cut; *pres/fut indic act 3rd sg*, τέμει.  
 τεταρτημοριον, τὸ : *no*, quadrant.  
 τετράγωνος -ον : *adj*, square; τὸ τετράγωνον, *no*, square.  
 τετράκις : *adv*, four times.  
 τετραπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, quadruple.  
 τετράπλευρος -ον : *adj*, quadrilateral.  
 τετραπλῶος -η -ον : *adj*, fourfold.  
 τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, κείμαι, ἐτέθην : *vb*, place, put.  
 τμήμα -ατος, τό : *no*, part cut off, piece, segment.  
 τοίνυν : *par*, accordingly.  
 τοιοῦτος -αὐτή -οὔτο : *pro*, such as this.  
 τομεύς -έως, ὁ : *no*, sector (of circle).  
 τομή, ἡ : *no*, cutting, stump, piece.  
 τόπος, ὁ : *no*, place, space.  
 τοσαυτάκις : *adv*, so many times.  
 τοσαυταπλάσιος -α -ον : *pro*, so many times.  
 τοσοῦτος -αὐτή -οὔτο : *pro*, so many.  
 τουτέστι = τοὔτ' ἔστι : *par*, that is to say.  
 τραπέζιον, τό : *no*, trapezium.  
 τρίγωνος -ον : *adj*, triangular; τὸ τρίγωνον, *no*, triangle.  
 τριπλάσιος -α -ον : *adj*, triple, threefold.  
 τρίπλευρος -ον : *adj*, trilateral.  
 τριπλ-όος -η -ον : *adj*, triple.  
 τρόπος, ὁ : *no*, way.

- τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα, τέτευγμαι, ἐτεύχθην :  
*vb*, hit, happen to be at (a place).
- ὑπάρχω : *vb*, begin, be, exist; see ἄρχω.
- ὑπεξάιρεσις -εως, ἦ : *no*, removal.
- ὑπερβάλλω : *vb*, overshoot, exceed; see βάλλω.
- ὑπεροχή, ἦ : *no*, excess, difference.
- ὑπερέχω : *vb*, exceed; see ἔχω.
- ὑπόθεσις -εως, ἦ : *no*, hypothesis.
- ὑπόκειμαι : *vb*, underlie, be assumed (as hypothesis); see κεῖμαι.
- ὑπολείπω : *vb*, leave remaining.
- ὑποτείνω, ὑποτενῶ, ὑπέτεινα, ὑποτέτακα, ὑποτέταμαι, ὑπετάθην  
 : *vb*, subtend.
- ὑψος -εως, τό : *no*, height.
- φανερός -ά -όν : *adj*, visible, manifest.
- φημί, φήσω, ἔφηνα, —, —, — : *vb*, say; ἔφραμεν, we said.
- φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκον, ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἠνέχθην : *vb*, carry.
- χώριον, τό : *no*, place, spot, area, figure.
- χωρίς : *pre + gen*, apart from.
- ψάω : *vb*, touch.
- ὡς : *par*, as, like, for instance.
- ὡς ἔτυχεν : *par*, at random.
- ὡσαύτως : *adv*, in the same manner, just so.
- ὥστε : *conj*, so that (causal), hence.

